

Pioneer Series

By :Mr. Ibrahim El-Sedawy



Units: 1 - 9 Zenda: 1 - 4

نحن نمد لك يد العون للنجاح والتفوق



Name : _____

Group : _____

Unit 1 : Writers and Stories

Key Vocabulary

competition	مسابقة / منافسة	develop	يطور / ينمي
old-fashioned	موضة قديمة	district	حي سكني / مقاطعة / منطقة
routine (-ly)	الروتين (روتينياً - بانتظام)	establish	يؤسس / يثبت / يرسخ
attachments	مرفقات	law	قانون
midday	منتصف اليوم	pioneer (pioneering)	رائد (ريادي)
custom (It's a / the)	عادة	style	أسلوب
publisher	ناشر	challenge	يتحدى / التحدي
average	متوسط	confused	متحير / مرتبك
insist (on)	يصر (على)	poetry	الشعر
believer	مؤمن	disabled	معوق
collection	مجموعة	beliefs	معتقدات

Vocabulary

interpret	يترجم / يفسر	respected position	مكانة محترمة
customary (It's)	مُعتاد	organisation	منظمة
fashionable / stylish	على الموضة	obey rules	يطيع القواعد
short stories	قصص قصيرة	literature	الأدب
editor	محرر صحفي	Arab culture	الثقافة العربية
author	مؤلف	experience	يجرب / يعاني
diplomat	رجل دبلوماسي	experiences	خبرات / تجارب (الحياة)
politician	رجل سياسة	the disabled	المعوقين
journalist	صحفي	disability	إعاقة
postman	ساعي بريد	block of flats	عمارة سكنية
secretary	سكرتير(ة)	society	مجتمع
secretarial	متعلق بالسكرتارية	lawyer	محامي
insistent	مُصر / مُلح	headache	صداع
traditional	تقليدي	ending	نهاية
achievement	إنجاز	handle / deal with	يتعامل مع
article	مقالة	skills	مهارات
fiction	الأدب القصصي / خيال	tools	أدوات
create	يخلق	retire	يتقاعد
deliver	يوصل	tolerant	متسامح
graduate	يتخرج / خريج	survey	إحصائية / استطلاع رأي
career	الحياة العملية	behaviour	سلوك
revise	يراجع	opportunity	فرصة

Prepositions & Expressions

look old-fashioned	يبدو موضة قديمة	at night / dawn	ليلاً / فجرًا
Be a believer in	مؤمن بـ	at midnight	في منتصف الليل
Have a belief	لديه اعتقاد	as far as I'm concerned	على حد علمي
believe in	يؤمن بـ	I'd say that	في رأيي
ask for opinion	يطلب رأي	first prize in	الجائزة الأولى في
e-mail attachment	مرفق مع البريد	the lights went out	انطفأت الأنوار
above average	فوق المتوسط	since the age of	منذ سن الـ....
at the same time	في نفس الوقت	as well as writing	بالإضافة إلى كتابة
graduate in law	يتخرج في القانون	Be made into	يتم تحويله إلى
give me a headache	يسبب لي صداعاً	establish him as	تجعل له مكانة مرموقة
is still thought of as	مازال ينظر إليه كـ	expert on / in / at	خبير في
typical of	له نفس صفات	translate from ... into	يترجم من ... إلى
work for	يعمل لدى	type onto	يطبع علي
write for	يكتب لـ	compete with	يتنافس مع
thank for	يشكر علي	give in	يسلم شيء (باليد)
available for	متاح لـ	get confused	يتحير / يرتبك
adjust / adapt to	يتكيف أو يتأقلم علي	tolerant of / towards	متسامح تجاه

Antonyms

midday	منتصف النهار	midnight	منتصف الليل
flexible	مرن	fixed	ثابت
experienced	ذو خبرة	inexperienced	بلا خبرة
lawful / legal	قانوني - شرعي	unlawful / illegal	غير قانوني
support	يؤيد / يساند	oppose	يعارض
fiction	الخيال (الادب القصصي)	non-fiction	الواقع

Derivatives

Verb	Noun	Adjective
compete / يتنافس	competitor منافس	competitive تنافسي
publish / ينشر	publisher ناشر	published منشور
collect / يجمع	collection مجموعة	collective جماعي / تعاوني
write / يكتب	writer كاتب	written مكتوب
establish / يؤسس	establishment مؤسسة	established مؤسس
settle / يستوطن / يستقر	settlement مستوطنة	settled مأهول / مستوطن
	diplomacy دبلوماسية	diplomatic دبلوماسي
confuse / يربك	confusion حيرة / ارتباك	confused مرتبك / متحير
		confusing محير / مربك

Words go together

have a routine	لديه روتين معين	enter a competition	يدخل مسابقة
enforce the law	يُطبق أو ينفذ القانون	widen horizons	يوسع الآفاق
break the law	يخالف القانون	human resources	الموارد البشرية
against the law	ضد القانون	natural disasters	كوارث طبيعية
strict laws	قوانين صارمة	multicultural society	مجتمع متعدد الثقافات
civilized society	مجتمع متحضر	social justice	العدالة الاجتماعية
members of society	أعضاء المجتمع	eliminate illiteracy	يمحو الأمية

Make or Do

عادة نستخدم make للتحدث عن انتاج او خلق (صناعة) او بناء شئ جديد.
عادة نستخدم do للتحدث عن عمل (أداء) او مهمة او نشاط.

Complete with the correct form of make or do:

- Have you any arrangements for the holidays?
I can't come out because I've got to the washing up.
You have two mistakes in the test.
Ali a good job when he that new table.

Make	Do		
make a noise	يثير ضوضاء	do a job	يؤدي وظيفة
make a mistake	يخطئ	do the homework	يحل الواجب
make a speech	يلقى خطابا	do the housework	يقوم بشغل البيت
make a table	يصنع منضدة	do the washing up	يقوم بغسل الأطباق
make arrangements	يقوم بترتيبات	do well in	يؤدي بصورة جيدة
make a phone call	يتصل تليفونيا	do a survey	يقوم بعمل احصائية
make a difference	يحدث اختلاف في	do an operation	يجرى عملية جراحية
make a decision	يتخذ قرار	do work	يقوم بالعمل
make money / a fortune	يكون ثروة	do a project on	يعمل بحث أو دراسة عن
make a profit / loss	يحقق ربح / خسارة	do research on / into	يعمل أبحاث على
make a choice	يختار	do the shopping	يتسوق
make a suggestion	يقدم اقتراح	do business	يقوم بعمل تجارى
make a promise	يقدم وعدا	do things	يفعل أشياء
make troubles	يسبب متاعب	do repairs	يقوم بعمل اصلاحات
make friends	يتخذ أصدقاء	do a favour	يقدم خدمة أو معروف
make a discovery	يقوم بعمل اكتشاف	do exercise	يتدرب
make an achievement	يحقق انجاز	do a quiz	يحل مسابقة
make a journey	يقوم برحلة	do a hobby	يمارس هواية
make effort	يبذل مجهود	do a test	يمتحن

Read the following carefully

Listening

Interviewer: When did you start writing?

Writer : I first wrote stories and poems when I was at primary school.

Interviewer: What was the first thing you wrote?

Writer : When I was seven, I wrote a poem which won 2nd prize in a national competition for school children.

Interviewer: When did you start writing stories?

Writer : When I was at university I wrote short stories for a student magazine. My head was always full of ideas. While I was finishing one story, I was planning the next one.

Interviewer: Didn't you get confused?

Writer : Not really. I used to write very quickly- I finished most short stories in two or three days. As soon as I'd finished one story, I started the next one.

Interviewer: Do you still write like that?

Writer : No, I don't write short stories now. Now I only write novels. They take much longer.

Interviewer: So how do you write now? Do you have a fixed routine?

Writer : Yes. I write from nine in the morning till three in the afternoon, with a ten minute break for coffee at midday.

Interviewer: Do you use a computer?

Writer : No, I'm old-fashioned. I use a pencil and paper. I used a computer for a few weeks, but it gave me a headache. So first I write something by hand, then my secretary types it onto the computer. My publisher insists that I send everything as an e-mail attachment.

Interviewer: How many words do you usually write?

Writer : I write one thousand new words a day for a week, then I spend two or three days checking the week's work until I'm completely happy. I'd changed my last novel six times before I was happy with it.

Interviewer: Do you show other people?

Writer : No, not until a novel's almost finished. Then I give it to two or three good friends and ask them for their opinions.

Interviewer: Do they ever tell you they don't like what you've written?

Writer : Yes! Last year both of the people who read one of my books said they didn't like how my story ended. So I changed it.

Interviewer: What did you think of the ending of your last story?

Writer : When I finished it, I thought it was my best ending yet!

Interviewer: That's very interesting. Thank you for talking to me.

Writer : You're welcome.

Reading

Yehia Haqqi (1905 – 1992)

Yehia Haqqi was one of the pioneers of modern Egyptian literature. As well as being an important writer, he was an expert on Arab culture. Yehia Haqqi was born in 1905 in the Sayyida Zeinab district of Cairo. He graduated in law and worked for a short time as a lawyer. In 1929, he began his career as a diplomat and he worked abroad for more than 20 years. The time he had spent in France, Italy, Turkey and Libya gave him experiences he later used in his writing. At the same time as he was working, Haqqi was also writing stories. His first short story, published in 1925, established him as one of the great short story writers of the Arab world. Haqqi always wanted to help poor and disabled people. In 1955, he wrote a collection of short stories about the poor and the disabled, which won an important prize. One of his novels, *the postman*, was made into a film. In 1992, he had to go to hospital after an earthquake in Cairo, but gave his bed to a poor person who he thought needed it more. Haqqi wrote in a new way about Arab society and customs in the twentieth century. Haqqi was also interested in the Arabic language and he developed a new style of writing which is respected today.

As well as writing his own novels and stories, Haqqi also translated Russian, French, Italian and Turkish literature into Arabic. He was a very strong believer in the power of books and he supported many young Egyptian writers. Haqqi died in 1992, but is still thought of as the father of the modern short story and the novel in Egypt.

Definitions

believer	someone who believes that a particular idea or thing is very good.
collection	a set of similar things that you keep together.
custom	something that people do because it is traditional.
disabled	unable to use a part of his body in the way that most people do.
average	the amount you get by adding several quantities together and then dividing them by the number of quantities.
confused	unable to understand something clearly.
insist	to say firmly that something is true while other think the opposite.
poetry	the art of writing poems. / poems in general.
secretary	types letters, arranges meetings, answers telephone calls, etc.. .
routine (n)	the usual way in which you do things.
midday	twelve o'clock in the middle of the day.
attachment	a part that you fasten to something else.
publisher	a person or company that produces books, magazines, etc..... .
custom	something that people do in a society because it is traditional.
develop	to make a new product or idea successful.

district	an area of a city or country.
establish	to achieve or give someone a respected position in society or in an organization.
law	the system of rules that people in a country or place must obey
pioneer	one of the first people to do something that other people will continue to develop.
style	a way of doing or making something that is typical of a particular person, group or period.
old-fashioned	not modern and not fashionable any more.

Language Notes

routine (روتين (يعطل العمل) روتين (نظام ثابت كل يوم)	red tape (روتين الحكومي (يعطل العمل)
---	---

Ex: Getting up at dawn is part of his daily **routine**.
After a lot of **red tape**, he got his passport.

style أسلوب كتابة	way طريقة كاتب
--------------------------	-----------------------

Ex: The story / It was written in a simple style. - He developed a new style.
I particularly like her style. - He wrote in a new way. الكاتب والكتابة

graduate from يتخرج من جامعة كذا	a graduate of خريج لجامعة كذا
graduate (with a degree) in	يتخرج بشهادة في
a graduate student طالب متخرج	graduated متدرج

Ex: He **graduated (with a degree) in** medicine.
He is **a graduate of** the Faculty of Medicine.
He **graduated from** the Faculty of Medicine.

habit عادة (شخصية)	custom عرف سائد في المجتمع
---------------------------	-----------------------------------

Ex: I wish I could stop smoking. It is a very bad **habit**.
It is a **custom** in Western Europe for little boys to wear short pants to school.

experience خبرة في مجال العمل (اسم لا يعد و لا يسبقها أداة نكرة)	
experiences مواقف / تجارب (يمر بها الانسان في حياته)	
experiment تجربة (تستخدم عندما نتحدث عن العلماء و أبحاثهم)	

Ex: I'm afraid I don't have much sales **experience**.
His **experiences** in Germany were rather depressing.
They did a number of **experiments** last week.

work عمل - مكان العمل (اسم لا يعد)	career الحياة العملية للفرد
job وظيفة - عمل (اسم يعد)	profession مهنة (تحتاج لمؤهلات وتدريب)

Ex: I have got a lot of work to do. Mr Ahmed leaves work at two o'clock.
He has got a job as a teacher. I have got a lot of jobs to do.
He started his career five years ago. Teaching is a noble profession.

a ten-minute break

راحة / فسحة لمدة عشر دقائق

لاحظ عدم جمع الكلمات الدالة على الزمن أو الوقت إذا جاء قبلها عدد و بعدها اسم

enjoy / finish + v. + ing

يستمتع بـ / ينتهي من

Ex: I enjoy watching football on TV. - Have you finished reading the story?

the poor الفقراء – the disabled المعاقين

استخدام the قبل بعض الصفات يحول

the rich الأغنياء – the injured المصابون

الصفة الى اسم يدل على مجموعة

Ex: I read a collection of short stories about the poor and the disabled.

a day / an hour

تستخدم a قبل كلمات معينة بمعنى (في كل أو لكل)

Ex: Ali studies five hours a day. He drives 80 miles an hour.

Spot the Difference

translate	يترجم نصوص	interpret	يترجم فورياً
social	اجتماعي (شيء)	sociable	اجتماعي (شخص)
retire	يتقاعد لبلوغ سن المعاش	resign	يستقيل من العمل
graduate	يتخرج / خريج	gratitude	امتنان / شكر
district	حي سكني	distract	يشتت / يلهي
member	عضو في مؤسسة	organ	عضو في الجسد
succeed in + v-ing	ينجح في	manage to + inf.	يتمكن من

Language Functions

Giving opinion		اعطاء الرأي
I think that	In my opinion,	
I don't think that	In / From my point of view	
I'd say that	As far as I am concerned	

Choose the correct answer:

- 1- Early black and white photos show people in (old fashioned – black fashioned – white fashioned – torn) clothes.
- 2- The Sun is at its strongest at (midnight – evening – dawn – midday).
- 3- I don't really have a (protein – routine – valentine – bulletin) during the holidays.
- 4- My friend won a prize in a (poet – put – poetess – poetry) competition.
- 5- I sent an e-mail with two (attachments – letter – parts – posts). They were photos of my friends.
- 6- That author's books are very successful, so I think he will easily find a (buyer – reader – publisher – writer) for his next book.
- 7- I really enjoyed this book. It is written in a very simple (system – design – style – way).

- 8- My brother wants to be a lawyer, so he's studying (**fashion – law – medicine – straw**) at university.
- 9- Yehia Haqqi came from a poor (**district – capital – road – way**) of Cairo.
- 10- Magdi Yacoub was one of the first heart transplant (**captains – players – pioneers – astronauts**).
- 11- In my grandfather's village, they still follow the same traditional (**customs – habits – stations – costumes**) that he used to follow when he was a boy.
- 12- Ali 's cousin is (**disabled – blind – dump – deaf**) and cannot walk very well.
- 13- My sister loves clothes and buys very (**changeable – believable – fashionable – comparable**) dresses.
- 14- His first job was as a (**law – lawyer – lawful – lower**).
- 15- A (**diplomat – publisher – producer – performer**) is someone who produces books, newspapers or magazines.
- 16- My parents gave me a (**team – competition – connection – collection**) of modern short stories for my birthday.
- 17- Yehia Haqqi was an important twentieth century (**writer – fighter – teacher – comedian**).
- 18- My mother has a (**believe – believer – believing – belief**) that children learn best by playing games.
- 19- Although Nawal has a (**disability – disables – disabled – disable**), she is very good at sports.
- 20-** I have a ten (**minutes – minute – minute's – minutes'**) break for something to eat at midday.
- 21- When I was seven I wrote a poem which (**beat – gained – earned – won**) a prize.
- 22- I enjoyed (**read – reading – with reading – to read**) novels when I was a young child.
- 23- In 1929, he began his (**carrier – career – courier – carefree**) as a diplomat.
- 24- As well as being an important writer, he was an expert (**with – of – on – about**) Arab culture.
- 25- He graduated in law and worked as a (**doctor – dentist – teacher – lawyer**).
- 26- The time he had spent abroad gave him (**experiments – explosions – expenses – experiences**) he later used in his writing.
- 27- Haqqi's first short story was (**declared – published – advertised – come out**) in 1925.
- 28- As well as (**write – writing – wrote – to write**) novels, he also translated French literature into Arabic.
- 29- Haqqi's story, The Postman, was (**done – worked – played – made**) into a film.
- 30- Haqqi was interested (**in – at – of – by**) the Arabic language.

- 31- He (**spoilt – did – developed – directed**) a new style of writing which is respected today.
- 32- He was a very strong believer (**in – at – of – with**) the power of books.
- 33- It was interesting hearing about his (**experiments – experts – exports – experiences**) as a policeman.
- 34- A lot of people (**support – suppose – suggest – import**) Al Ahly Club.
- 35- They told us we have to give (**up – off – out – in**) our homework on Sunday.
- 36- They cut (**out – down – into – on**) five trees in the park.
- 37- He writes two short stories (**in – a – an – some**) month.
- 38- Using the computer for a long time (**does – makes – works – gives**) me a headache.
- 39- He (**tested – experienced – examined – touched**) many different and interesting ideas in his work.
- 40- Education can give everyone the (**opportunity – occasion – opposition – supposition**) to be successful.
- 41- His first short story (**developed – did – provided – established**) him as one of the great short story writers of the Arab world.
- 42- Many wealthy people offer help to the poor and the (**disability – ability – disabled – capability**).
- 43- When the employee reaches the age of 60, he / she (**recycles – retires – starves – survives**).
- 44- Solving the problem of shortage of water is one of the (**challenges – charities – changes – charms**) faced by many countries today.
- 45- After he had (**graduated – generated – graded – grew**) in law, he worked as a lawyer.
- 46- Have you finished (**read – to read – have read – reading**) the magazine?
- 47- My cousin works (**out – on – up – for**) a computer company in Cairo.
- 48- My uncle works in politics. He is a (**magician – musician – diplomat – politician**).
- 49- My brother is a journalist. He wrote a / an (**essay – article – composition – letter**) about global warming.
- 50- Small supermarkets have to cut prices to (**compete – contain – confess – conclude**) with the big ones.
- 51- If you don't (**break – crash – obey – disobey**) rules, you'll be punished.
- 52- This painting is (**lyrical – historical – typical – logical**) of his early work.
- 53- The flight attendant welcomed us (**aboard – abroad – broad – broaden**).
- 54- He wouldn't try to mislead you. It's not his (**style – case – condition – circumstance**).
- 55- The homeless often (**live – is living – lives – living**) on streets.
- 56- There's no fixed (**career – profession – routine – position**) at work; every day is different.

- 57- In my country, it's the (**customary – custom – costumes – habit**) for women to get married in white.
- 58- I'll e-mail my report to you as an (**attachment – amendment – adjustment – appointment**).
- 59- I had several bad (**experiences – experience – experiments – expenses**) during my last trip.
- 60- My friend and I are going to enter an athletics (**connection – combination – competition – compression**) We all hope to win something.
- 61- Scientists are paid to (**avoid – develop – work – do**) new medicines every year to help people.
- 62- When I was at school, I won a poetry writing (**race – article – competition – game**).
- 63- I really enjoy reading Haqqi's novels. I particularly like his (**way – style – system – design**).
- 64- My daily (**routine – habit – custom – way**) starts when my alarm o'clock goes off at 6.30.
- 65- Yehia Haqqi was one of the (**careers – goers – astronauts – pioneers**) of modern Egyptian literature.
- 66- I have got a valuable stamp (**connection – collection – infection – team**).
- 67- I write an (**average – amount – about – number**) of a thousand words a day.
- 68- I just have a sandwich (**at – in – on – with**) midday for my meal.
- 69- (**Habits – Customs – works – incidents**) are things that people do because they are traditional.
- 70- Have you (**made – do – done – gave**) any arrangements for the holidays?
- 71- Ali (**did – made – makes – does**) a good job when he was working with us .
- 72- It is (**secretarial – customary – customs – costumes**) to take off your shoes on entering mosques .
- 73- Those verses are meaningless for me. They are very (**well – confusing – confused – good**)
- 74- My (**lawyer – doctor – nurse – secretary**) types my new story onto the computer.
- 75- My publisher (**lists – insists – assists – lets**) that I send everything as an email attachment.
- 76- You should always be tolerant (**of – to – at – by**) other people.
- 77- The naughty child (**makes – does – gives – finds**) me a headache.
- 78- Yehia Haqqi is (**settled – built – written – established**) as a great short story writer.
- 79- Ahmed looks like Zeyad. Ahmed is typical (**with – of – from – on**) Zeyad.
- 80- I like beds (**made – done – been – had**) by this carpenter.
- 81- As far as he (**has – does – is – am**) concerned, this is a good film.

Language Focus

Past Simple Tense زمن الماضي البسيط

التصريف الثاني للفعل

Ex: At the age of seven, my parents **took** me to Jordan.

- 1- يعبر الماضي البسيط عن حدث بدأ و انتهى في الماضي وهو محدد بوقت ما او تاريخ ما :
- She **visited** London in 2010. - I **was** in Alexandria a month ago.
 - 2- يعبر الماضي البسيط عن عادات و أفعال متكررة بانتظام في الماضي :
- I always **ate** breakfast **before** I went to school.
- She **cooked** lunch every day last week.
 - 3- يعبر الماضي البسيط عن حدث وقع مباشرة بعد آخر في الماضي (التلاحق) :
- When he **had** an idea, he **wrote** a short story.
 - 4- يعبر عن الحقائق الماضية وعن الافعال المنتهية (الموتى) وعن الحدث الثاني :
- Shakspeare **wrote** Hamlet. - Colombus **discovered** America.
 - 5- يعبر عن سرد الاحداث في الماضي مع first, then, next, at last, finally,
- They **drew** some pictures of the nature, then **hanged** them on the walls.
 - 6- يستخدم لوصف حدث استمر لفترة في الماضي ولكنه غير موجود الآن :
- She **lived** in Tokyo **for** seven years. It was a beautiful city.
- They **were** in London **from** Monday **to** Thursday of last week.
- ✍ يستخدم الماضي البسيط مع الكلمات الآتية:

ذات مرة Yesterday – ago – last.... – In the past – Once / Once upon a time
- One day – In 2007 – From + سنة + to + سنة – When I was.....,

How long ago = When – for – first – the other (day, week, month)

- I **last ate** fish when I was in Alex.

اعتاد أن used to + inf.

- ✍ تستخدم للتعبير عن التناقض بين العادات أو المواقف في الماضي و الحاضر :
- He **used to swim** every day. Now he **doesn't** (swim).
 - He **used to be** late all the time. Now, he **isn't** (late).
- ✍ وفي حالة النفي نستخدم: didn't use to + مصدر
- I **didn't use to play** computer games, but now I do.
- ✍ وفي حالة السؤال نستخدم: did + فاعل + use to + مصدر
- **Did you use to walk** to school? - **Where did you use to live**?
- ✍ تستخدم no longer بدلا من used to ويأتي بعدها الفعل في المضارع البسيط:
- He **used to smoke**. = He **no longer smokes**.
- ✍ تستخدم any more / any longer في نهاية الجملة المنفية في المضارع البسيط:
- He **used to smoke**. = He **doesn't smoke any more**.

used to + inf. = It was my habit to / I was in / got the habit of
Be used to + v-ing .. = It's my habit to

Past Continuous Tense زمن الماضي المستمر

was / were + v. + ing

Ex: Somebody phoned me while I **was cooking** the dinner.

- 1- يعبر الماضي المستمر عن حدث كان مستمرا أثناء وقت معين في الماضي :
- Between six and half past six this morning, I **was having** breakfast.
- 2- يعبر الماضي المستمر عن حدث كان مستمرا عندما تخلله حدث آخر في الماضي :
- I **was reading** a book when my friend **arrived**.
- 3- يعبر الماضي المستمر عن حدثين كانا مستمران في نفس الوقت :
- While / As / When I **was doing** my homework, my sister **was helping** mum.
كعادة لا نستخدم الماضي المستمر مع الأفعال التي تصف حالة، شعور، حاسة، رأي، فهم، ادراك، ملكية ولكن نستخدم معها ماضي بسيط لأنها تعبر عن حالة ثابتة ودائمة :
- She **seemed** ill when I **visited** her.
- While I **was** at home, someone **knocked** on the door. (NOT: was being)
لاحظ : - لا يستخدم V.To.Be في الاستمرار ولكن نكتفي ب was / were فقط .
- أفعال الحواس قد تأتي في الاستمرار اذا جاءت بمعنى مؤقت و متغير مثل:
- Where are you? - I'm **tasting** the food. – Why are you **smelling** the food?

ك يستخدم الماضي المستمر مع الكلمات الآتية :

While بينما - As بينما - Just as في اللحظة التي - When عندما - all day طوال الوقت - all the time طوال الوقت - Yesterday morning / at noon / at 7 / from 7 to 9,

- ك يأتي بعد While ماضي مستمر و الفعل الثاني ماضي بسيط أو مستمر حسب المعنى :
- While he **was leaving** the house, the phone rang.
 - As he **was leaving** the house, the phone rang.
 - While / Just as he **was leaving** the house, the phone rang.
- ك يمكن أن يأتي بعد when ماضي بسيط ثم ماضي مستمر أو العكس حسب المعنى :
- I **was studying** English when the lights went out.
 - The lights went out when I **was studying** English.
- ك يأتي بعد because ماضي مستمر و الفعل الآخر بسيط طالما النتيجة تخللت السبب:
- Magdy **couldn't** hear the phone because he **was having** a shower.
- ك في حالة عدم وجود فاعل بعد while نستخدم فعل ينتهي ب ing و مكملات :
- While **reading** at the library / While **at** the library, the phone rang.
- ك يمكن أن نستخدم During بدلا من While و يأتي بعدها اسم :
- During my lunchtime, the phone rang.
- ك يمكن أن نستخدم On بدلا من When و يأتي بعدها فعل ينتهي ب ing أو اسم :
- On **seeing** the police, the thief ran away.
- ك يمكن أن نستخدم ماضي مستمر للاعتذارات في الماضي واذا استلزم المعنى الاستمرار :
- A: I saw you at the station yesterday. B: Yes, I **was waiting** for my sister.

Past Perfect زمن الماضي التام

had + pp

Ex: As soon as he had taken the photograph, he showed it to his friend.

يستخدم الماضي التام للتعبير عن حدث وقع قبل حدث آخر في الماضي :

يستخدم الماضي التام مع هذه الروابط :

After + + فاعل + past perfect	ماضى تام	, past simple	ماضى بسيط
After + v. + ing / noun / pronoun		, past simple	ماضى بسيط
Having + p.p.		, past simple	ماضى بسيط

Ex: After he had done / doing his homework, he **watched** television.

Having done his homework, he **watched** television.

As soon as + فاعل + past perfect ماضى تام | , past simple | ماضى بسيط |

Ex: He **parked** his car **as soon as** he **had found** a place.

Before + فاعل + past simple	ماضى بسيط	, past perfect	ماضى تام
Before + v. + ing / noun / pronoun		, past perfect	ماضى تام

Ex: Before he **parked** his car , he **had found** a place.

Before **parking** his car, he **had found** a place.

By the time + فاعل + past simple ماضى بسيط | , past perfect | ماضى تام |

Ex: **By the time** the police arrived the thief **had** escaped.

When + فاعل + past perfect	ماضى تام	, past simple	ماضى بسيط
When + فاعل + past simple	ماضى بسيط	, past perfect	ماضى تام
It was only when + فاعل + past perfect	ماضى تام	+ that	+ ماضى بسيط

Ex: **When** he **had read** the novel, he **watched** TV.

When he **watched** TV, he **had read** the novel.

It was only when he **had read** the novel **that** he **watched** TV.

يأتي بعد **because** ماضى تام و الفعل الآخر بسيط طالما السبب انتهى قبل النتيجة :

- We **weren't** hungry because we **had already eaten**.

(النتيجة دائما ماضى بسيط أما السبب فيمكن أن يكون تام أو مستمر أو بسيط حسب المعنى)

يستخدم الماضي التام مع علامات المضارع التام اذا كان هناك جملة أخرى في الماضي :

- When I **met** you yesterday, the train **had just arrived**.

لاحظ الفرق في المعنى بين هاتين الجملتين :

- When / As soon as I **reached** the station, the train **had left**. I **missed** it.

- When / As soon as I (**had**) **reached** the station, the train **left**. I **caught** it.

Past simple (negative) + till / until + past perfect	ماضى تام	+ ماضى بسيط منفي
It wasn't until + past perfect	ماضى تام	+ that + ماضى بسيط

Ex: He **didn't park** his car **until** he **had found** a place.

It wasn't until he **had found** a place **that** he **parked** his car.

كـ لاحظ أيضا استخدام (until / till) في الجمل الآتية حسب معنى الحدثين:

- I had waited for Sara until she arrived.
- He had studied his lessons until dawn.
- I waited until 6 o'clock and then I went home.

By / Before + نقطة زمنية + ماضي تام

- By last Friday, he had finished the report.
- She had nearly revised all her lessons by six o'clock yesterday.

no sooner	than
Subject + had + hardly	+ p.p. when + ماضى بسيط
scarcely	when

Ex: He had no sooner gone shopping than it started to rain.
He had hardly gone shopping when it started to rain.

كـ لاحظ استخدام no sooner / hardly / scarcely بين had و التصريف الثالث.
كـ إذا بدأت الجملة بهذه الكلمات نضع الجملة الأولى في صيغة استفهام كالتالي :

No sooner	than
Hardly + had + فاعل + p.p. +	when + past simple ماضى بسيط
Scarcely	when

- No sooner had they finished painting our new house than we moved into it.

Immediately on / Shortly after + v-ing , ماضى بسيط

Choose the correct answer:

- 1-I once (used to read – was reading – had read – have read) the newspaper everyday. Now I don't have the time.
- 2-As soon as we arrived at school, the first lesson (had begun – began – have begun – begun). The teacher was so angry with us.
- 3-I (already saw – have already seen – had already seen – was already seen) the film before I read the book.
- 4-What (did you do – were you doing – have you done – do you do) when I called you? You sounded very busy.
- 5-I (had had – had – have had – was having) my own computer for 3 years before anything went wrong with it.
- 6-While I (did – was doing – have done – doing) my homework, my sister was listening to music.
- 7-In 2010, my parents (lived – were living – were lived – had lived) in a small flat in the city centre.
- 8-I (had gone – was going – have gone – went) to the museum in 2015.
- 9-Yesterday evening, we (revised – were revising – were revised – had revised) for our English test when all the lights went out.

- 10- It was dark when we (**reached – were reaching – were reached – had reached**) the beach because the sun went down.
- 11- After Mona (**played – was playing – was played – had played**) the piano, she helped her sister with her homework.
- 12- I first (**wrote – was writing – was written – had written**) stories and poems when I was at primary school.
- 13- When I was seven, I (**wrote – was writing – was written – had written**) a poem which won a prize.
- 14- While I was finishing one story, I (**planned – was planning – was planned – had planned**) the next one.
- 15- As soon as I (**finished – was finishing – was finishing – had finished**) a story, I started the next one.
- 16- I'd changed my last novel six times before I (**was – was being – has been – had been**) happy with it.
- 17- I sat down and (**did – was doing – was done – had done**) my work when I had opened the windows.
- 18- I returned home when Mother (**prepared – was preparing – was prepared – had prepared**) lunch.
- 19- A famous writer (**wrote – was writing – was written – had written**) this book a year ago.
- 20- I was reading a book when you (**phoned – were phoning – were phoned – had phoned**) me last night.
- 21- We (**lived – were living – were lived – had lived**) near a supermarket before we moved to this house.
- 22- She gave it to me while (**read – were reading – reading – had read**) the newspaper.
- 23- I (**read – hadn't read – don't read – had read**) any of his books before I read this one.
- 24- I didn't answer the phone because I (**prayed – was praying – was prayed – had prayed**).
- 25- I telephoned the police after (**saw – was seeing – seeing – had seen**) the accident.
- 26- By the time Nada arrived, we (**cleaned – were having – have – had had**) lunch, so there was nothing for her to eat.
- 27- I (**had – was – had had – had**) just finished doing the exercise when my father returned home.
- 28- The time he had spent in France, Italy, Turkey and Libya (**gave – had given – was given – was giving**) him experiences he later used in his writing.
- 29- At the same time as he (**worked – was working – were worked – had worked**), Haqqi was also writing stories.
- 30- I used to (**drove – drive – driving – driven**) very slowly. I drive faster now.

- 31- The teacher (**told – were telling – have told – were told**) us to give in our homework on Tuesday.
- 32- Yesterday, my sister gave me a book she (**had finished – has finished – finished – was finished**) reading the day before.
- 33- I (**used to read – was reading – had read – have read**) at least one book a week, but now I don't read so many.
- 34- At the age of seven, my parents (**are taking – were taking – took – take**) me to Jordan.
- 35- He didn't (**use – using – uses – used**) to need much sleep. He does now.
- 36- While father (**was reading – read – had read – has read**) the paper, mother was cooking dinner.
- 37- Where did you (**used – using – use – uses**) to play when you were young?
- 38- I said "Hello", but he couldn't hear me because he (**has listened – was listening – is listening – would listen**) to the radio.
- 39- After (**would win – win – winning – had won**) the match, the players jumped with joy
- 40- They couldn't go swimming because they (**forget – have forgotten – had forgotten – will forget**) their swimsuits.
- 41- Before (**leaving – left – had left – leave**) for London, he'd paid off his debts.
- 42- Hany couldn't answer the phone because he (**had – was having – have – had had**) a shower.
- 43- The boy (**is breaking – was breaking – broke – had broken**) the glass window when he hit it with the ball.
- 44- When I was young, I (**living – lived – have lived – live**) by the sea.
- 45- They (**were listening – listened – listen – have listened**) to music while their mother was cooking.
- 46- She (**didn't put – wasn't put – doesn't put – isn't put**) into prison until she had confessed with her crime.
- 47- At this time yesterday, we (**wait – were waiting – has waited – are waiting**) for the bus.
- 48- Mona (**didn't – wasn't – won't – don't**) forgive him until he apologizes for his mistakes.
- 49- My father (**was taken – took – was taking – has been taken**) me to a football match at the weekend.
- 50- How long ago (**will – has – did – had**) your uncle begin his new job?
- 51- Yesterday evening, more than a million people (**watched – watch – were watching – had watched**) the programme.
- 52- I was cleaning my room when the earthquake (**happened – happen – were happening – had happened**).
- 53- No sooner (**he had – had he – did he – he did**) reached the station than the train left.

- 54- As soon as he (**takes – has taken – will take – had taken**) the photograph, he showed it to his friend.
- 55- The last time I visited Manal (**was – has been – did – had been**) three months ago.
- 56- (**When – During – While – On**) my sleep, someone knocked on the door.
- 57- When I was younger, I (**used – was used – am using – was using**) to play tennis everyday.
- 58- Anthony Hope (**has written – writes – had written – wrote**) the prisoner of Zenda.
- 59- We arrived an hour late. The film (**began – was beginning – had begun – has begun**) half an hour before.
- 60- When I was young, I (**used to – used – use – nothing**) went swimming every day.
- 61- Having (**had seen – seeing – seen – saw**) the film, I went to bed.
- 62- Ali fell asleep during the match because he (**had gone – has gone – was going – had been going**) to bed late last night.
- 63- Immediately on arriving home, Adel (**discover – discovering – had discovered – discovered**) what happened.
- 64- It wasn't (**after – when – until – before**) I had seen him that I realized it.
- 65- It was only when Mum had returned (**than – that – then – this**) I left home.

Exercises on Unit 1

2) Read the following passage then answer the questions:

Dear Ali, How are you?

I had wanted to email you before I started my new job, but I did not have time! I've now worked here for two weeks. I'm working in an old building in the middle of the city at the moment and I travel to work by bus. By the end of next year, they will have finished building a new office in a different part of the city. So after that, I'll be travelling to work every day on the metro! Before I started this job, I hadn't known very much about new technology. Now I use it every day. I often talk to people in other countries, using the internet. The work is different every day. Yesterday I was interviewing a businesswoman from Japan.

Today I'm visiting a new hotel in Cairo and tomorrow I'm going to a meeting in Damietta. I think I'll have to get up very early because the train leaves at 5 a.m.! The job is very tiring and I don't have a routine yet, but I'm enjoying it. I have already written a lot of articles. You can read them online. I've met some famous people, too. There is a photo of me interviewing a politician in the attachment to this email. He works for the Ministry of Antiquities, so he knows all about ancient Egypt. I haven't met any sports people yet, but there's an important tennis competition next month. There are some famous tennis players going there and I'm sure I'll interview one.

Write soon. Best wishes, Munir

A) Choose the correct answer :

1- For how long has Munir done this job?

- a) for a year b) for two weeks c) since he moved offices d) since last May

2- Why does he have to get up early tomorrow?

- a) He's interviewing a businessman. b) He's visiting a new hotel.
c) He is going to a meeting. d) He's interviewing a politician.

3- Why did someone take a photo of Munir?

- a) He is famous. b) He was meeting a famous person.
c) He wanted a photo to send to his friend. d) Because his article is online.

4- What is the main idea of the email?

- a) Munir's new job is boring. b) Munir doesn't like his new job.
c) Munir's new job is busy but exciting.
d) Munir wants his job to pay him more money.

5- What does the underlined word one refer to?

- a) tennis competitions b) business people
c) a famous tennis player d) a politician

6- What does the word antiquities means?

- a) very old things b) farming c) medicine d) education

B) Answer the following questions :

7- Find a suitable subject for this email.

8- How does Munir usually communicate with people in the countries?

9- What job do you think Munir does?

10- Why didn't Munir email his friend before he got the job?

4- Finish the following dialogue :

Amir is discussing his homework with Nasser.

Amir : I need information about Rudyard Kipling for an essay, but I don't know which website to use.

Nasser : 1).....?

Amir : I tried typing his name into a search engine but I got hundreds of results. One website said that he wrote only one poem.

Nasser : 2)..... . He wrote lots of poems. Where did you find that information?

Amir : It's a website called All about poems. Do you think that the information is wrong?

Nasser : Yes. 3)..... . I think that's incorrect. What's the title of the essay?

Amir : 4)..... .

Nasser : OK. Type the essay title Rudyard Kipling's most popular poems in the searchengine. You will get fewer results now.

Amir : Yes, look: Kipling's ten most popular poems!

Nasser : 5).....?

Amir : Yes, I think it is very useful.

Nasser : It's important to write down your sources of information 6).....?

Amir : That's a good idea. I'll write it at the bottom of my work.

5) Write a paragraph of about 120 words about one of the following :

- A) A summary of a book that you have enjoyed.
- B) How reading literature improves our education

6- A) Translate into Arabic:

- 1- Egypt has a strong cultural history. Some of the great Arab writers, musicians and artists are Egyptians.
- 2- Yehia Haqqi was one of the pioneers of modern literature because he developed a new style of writing.
- 3- Sports and games play an important role in building up the body and the character.
- 4- Through sports, young people find an outlet to their energies. So, the government spares no effort to encourage sports.

B) Translate into English:

- 1- كل عام يسلم رئيس الجمهورية الكتاب و العلماء المتميزين جوائز قيمة.
- 2- كتب يحيى حقي البوسطجي و التي كان لها تأثير ايجابي على الرواية العربية.
- 3- لقد كتب نجيب محفوظ الكثير من الروايات التي ترجمت إلى لغات عديدة .
- 4- تملك مصر العديد من الرواد في الأدب العربي كيحي حقي وطه حسين ونجيب محفوظ .
- 5- يجب علي الوالدين توجيه ورعاية أبنائهم ليواصلوا رحلة الحياة بأمان.
- 6- ندرة المياه قد تكون سببا في اندلاع الحروب بين الدول في المستقبل.

B) How reading literature improves our education

Reading literature plays a very important role in improving our education. It helps us to enrich our vocabulary and learn the language better. It enriches our own experiences. It also helps us to benefit from other people's experiences. Moreover, it enables us to get in touch with the cultures of other nations and know about their customs and ways of life. It also helps us to understand other people and solve our problems. Above all, it helps us to gain more knowledge about life and the world in which we live. So, we all should encourage reading literature. Schools should do their best to help students enjoy reading literature. To sum up, we learn a lot from reading literature so we should give it due care.

Unit 2: My Father, An Egyptian Teacher

Key Vocabulary

association	جمعية	discipline	يهذب - يضبط
cultural	ثقافى	layer	طبقة / قشرة
ministry	وزارة	responsible (for)	مسؤول (عن)
political science	علوم سياسية	semicircle	نصف دائرة
silence	يُسكت - هدوء / صمت	serious	جاد - وقور / خطير
spoil	يُفسد / يُدلل	strict	حازم / صارم
honour	شرف / يكرم	plan	يخطط / خطة
fatherly	أبوي / حنون	ache	يؤلم / ألم
fresh ideas	أفكار جديدة	worthwhile	ذو شأن / جدير بالاهتمام

Vocabulary

steps	خطوات	gentle	لطيف
head teacher	مدرس أول	prepare well	يعد جيدا
inspire	يلهم	well-prepared	مُعد جيدا
relevant (suitable)	مناسب / ملائم	responsibility	مسؤولية
division	قسمة	introduction	مقدمة
confidence	ثقة	a success	نجاح
influence	تأثير / يؤثر	village	قرية
influential / influenced	متأثر / مؤثر	later	فيما بعد
discussion	مناقشة	inaccurate	غير دقيق
demand	مطلب / طلب - يطلب	engineer	مهندس
whatever	مهما / أى شئ	sensible	مدرك / عاقل / حكيم
level	مستوي	awards	جوائز / منح
realize	يدرك	interests	اهتمامات
recognize	يتعرف على	concerned	مهتم
qualities	صفات	important / importance	هام / اهمية
quantities	كميات	events	أحداث
achieve	يحقق	tale / legend	حكاية / أسطورة
grow up	يكبر	aged	في عمر
design	تصميم / يصمم	translator	مترجم
pay	يدفع / مرتب	interpreter	مترجم فوري
paintings	لوحات	reliable	موثوق
lecture	يحاضر / محاضرة	recommend	يوصي
lecturer	محاضر	childhood	طفولة
Arabic Literature	الأدب العربى	Ministry of Education	وزارة التربية والتعليم

Prepositions & Expressions

encourage to	يشجع على	sit in a circle	يجلس في دائرة
discourage from	يمنع من	leave dreaming	يترك ... يحلم
earn money	يكسب مال	lecture at ... about	يحاضر في ... عن
win money	يفوز بجائزة مالية	set up	ينشيء
married to	متزوج من	good luck with	حظ سعيد في
married with	متزوج ويعول	dream of / about	يحلم بـ
take place in	يحدث في	worried about	قلق
take part in	يشارك في	busy with + noun	مشغول في
take turns	يتناوب الأدوار	awards for	جوائز لـ
reach / achieve goals	يحقق أهداف	dig deeper to	يحفز أعمق لـ
score goals	يحرز أهداف	Be / Look like	يكون مثل أو يشبه
give goals	يحدد أهداف	move around	يتحرك في كل مكان
grow up reading	يكبر على قراءة	Be natural with	طبيعي مع
in the honour of	على شرف	continue to	يستمر في
have the honour of	لديه شرف	reach a level	يصل لمستوى معين
have much influence	له تأثير كبير	come with fresh ideas	يبتكر أفكار جديدة

Antonyms

Word	الكلمة	Antonym	العكس
demand	يطلب - طلب	offer	يعرض - عرض
responsible	مسئول	irresponsible	متهور - غير مسئول
natural	طبيعي	artificial / man-made	صناعي
confidence	الثقة	doubt	الشك
discipline	يؤدّب - يهذب	spoil	يُبدّل - يُفسد
worthwhile	جدير بالاهتمام	worthless	ليس له قيمة / تافه

Derivatives

Verb		Noun		Adjective	
discipline	يؤدّب - يهذب	discipline	تهذيب - انضباط	disciplined	منضبط/ منظم
confide	يأتمن	confidence	ثقة	confident	واثق
differ	يختلف	difference	اختلاف	different	مختلف
honour	يُكرّم - يوقّر	honour	شرف - فخر	honourable	جليل - مبدل
silence	يُخرس - يُسكّت	silence	صمت - سكون	silent	صامت - ساكن
persuade	يقنع	persuasion	الإقناع	persuasive	مُقنع
inspire	يلهم	inspiration	الهام	inspired	مُلهم
				inspiring	مُلهم

Words go together

influential writer	كاتب مؤثر	Radio and Television	الإذاعة والتلفزيون
health problems	مشاكل صحية	artificial intelligence	ذكاء صناعي
cultural heritage	تراث ثقافي	a week-old moon	التربيع الاول
political affairs	الشئون السياسية	double efforts	بُضَاعَف الجهود
the public opinion	الرأي العام	Mass media	وسائل الإعلام
conduct a survey	يجرى استطلاع	news headlines	عناوين الأخبار

Read the following carefully

Listening:

Interviewer: Many people have grown up reading the books of Abdel-Tawab Youssef. In Fact, I have just finished one of his books, called MY FATHER, AN EGYPTIAN TEACHER. With me today is Mrs **Abdelaziz**: She has written a book about why the writer became successful. So, Mrs Abdelaziz, Was Youssef from Cairo?

Mrs Abdelaziz: No, he wasn't, although he lived all his life there. He was born in 1928 in a small village near Beni Suef. When he was a child, he loved to read children's books and also loved writing.

Interviewer: Did he go to university?

Mrs Abdelaziz: Yes, in 1945 he started studying political science at Cairo University. He graduated in 1950 and then worked for the Egyptian Ministry of Education but six months later, his father died.

Interviewer: That must have been a difficult time for him.

Mrs Abdelaziz: That's right. He wanted to live in Cairo with his mother and his three younger sisters. His uncles didn't think that was a good idea, but he wanted to earn enough money to send his sisters to school, which was unusual at that time.

Interviewer: When did he start writing children book?

Mrs Abdelaziz: He didn't start for many years. He married Noaila Rashed in 1956 and they had three children. He set up the Children's Culture Association in 1968 and he travelled to many countries to study children's culture, but he didn't start writing until 1975.

Interviewer: What happened then?

Mrs Abdelaziz: Well, in 1957, started writing children's stories for radio and television. The stories were very successful and so he started to write novels, poems and plays, often about important events and people in the world. He won many awards for his writing.

Interviewer: Are his books only famous in Egypt?

Mrs Abdelaziz: No. Since he became famous in Egypt, people have translated his books into many languages, including English, French and Chinese.

Abdel-Tawab Youssef travelled a lot too. In 1985, he lectured at the university of Ohio in the United States about writing for children and the importance of Arabic literature. He died in 2015, aged 87.

Interviewer: His books have influenced children for many years, and I am sure children will continue to enjoy his books in the future. Thank you!

Reading

My father, An Egyptian Teacher

For all those who have had the honour of being called "teacher":

The head teacher realised that the young teacher was worried about his first lesson at the school. "Don't worry, you've all the qualities to be a good teacher!" he said. "You are very natural with the students. You're serious and responsible, warm but strict. That is what I've learnt about you in the short time you've been here. You will need to discipline the students, but you'll be fatherly and gentle."

"Do you think so? I've always prepared my lessons well," said the teacher. "I give myself goals and plan how to achieve them. I plan an introduction and then use steps. And I like to use paintings and pictures," said the teacher. "That's good. You've come with fresh ideas," answered the head.

"I believe that a teacher mustn't silence his students. He must inspire them and encourage them to communicate and to take part in conversations." "You don't want to spoil the students," warned the head.

"Oh, I won't. We should encourage them to move around the class. We can change the design of the classroom: if there's a discussion, the students can sit in a circle or semicircle. We could even have the class outside, under the trees!" said the teacher. "Good luck with your first class tomorrow," said the head.

The head teacher left him dreaming about his new life as a teacher. He believed that his was the most important job: he was society's engineer, helping to build it. A teacher is like the layers of the earth: whatever level you reach, you can dig deeper to find more layers that are even richer than before. His was the best job in the world.

Definitions

association	an organization for people with the same interests, or who do the same kind of work
cultural	relating to art, music, literature etc.
ministry	a government department
political science	the study of the ideas and activities that are concerned with how a country is governed
lecture	talk to a group of people about a subject
importance	the quality of being important
influence	has an effect on the way someone/thing develops or behaves
discipline	to teach someone to obey rules and control their own behavior

layer	one of several levels of different materials, on top of each other
responsible	sensible and able to be trusted
semicircle	a group arranged in a curved line
serious	quiet and sensible
silence	make someone stop giving their opinion
spoil	let a child have or do whatever they want
strict	making sure that people always obey rules.
honour	something that makes you feel proud and happy

Language Notes

- هناك أكثر من طريقة لنطق أسماء السنوات :

- 2015 = two thousand and fifteen / twenty fifteen
- 2001 = two thousand and one / twenty oh-one
- 1965 = "nineteen sixty-five" - 1908 = nineteen oh-eight

- هناك أسماء و أفعال لها نفس الشكل :

break	يكسر	If you play ball in the house, you'll break something.					
break	راحة / فسحة	Let's play a game in the break between lessons.					
influence	يؤثر علي	His books have influenced children for many years.					
influence	تأثير	She has a lot of influence over his thinking.					
chat	يحدث	face	يواجه	lecture	يحاضر	ache	يؤلم
chat	حدث	face	وجه	lecture	محاضرة	ache	ألم
demand	يطلب	plan	يخطط	silence	يُسكت	design	يصمم
demand	طلب / مطلب	plan	خطة	silence	سكوت	design	تصميم

- عند اضافة (ly) للاسم يصبح صفة :

ودي - ودود fatherly / brotherly / friendly = neighbourly / أخوي / أبوي
 وهذا التعبير يستخدم كظرف
 - My teacher treats me **in a fatherly way**.

communicate in بلغة : I can communicate in English.
communicate with مع : I can communicate with tourists in English.

help (مصدر فقط) أو (مصدر) + **to** + (مفعول)

- The teacher was the society's engineer, **helping to build (build) it**.

make (مفعول) + مصدر - The strict teacher **makes** his students **respect** him.
make (مفعول) + صفة - Your success **makes** me **happy**.

like (مثل) للتشبيه - A teacher is **like** the layers of the earth.
as (ك) للحقيقة - My father works **as** a teacher. He is a teacher.

يتآمر conspire..... يطمح aspire..... يلهم inspire

- A good teacher must **inspire** his students and encourage them.

تغذي - يعيش على live on يعيش في live in يعيش مع live with

- He decided to live with his family in Cairo.

حادثة accident حدث في قصة او فيلم incident حدث هام event

- He used to write about important **events** and people in the world.

- This is the best **incident** in the film.

يكافئ أو مكافأة ودية reward جائزة أو يمنح جائزة او شهادة جامعية award

- He won many **awards** for his writing. - He **was awarded** his PHD last week.

- They **rewarded** him for his good behavior.

مشهور ك famous as مشهور في famous in مشهور ب famous for

- He is **famous for** his honesty. - He became **famous in** Egypt as a writer.

يفوز ب / يكسب (يأتي بعده الشيء الذي نفوز به أو نكسبه) win (won / won)

يهزم (يتغلب على) (يأتي بعده الشخص أو الفريق المهزوم) beat (beat / beaten)

يكتسب / يزداد gain (gained / gained)

يكسب (من العمل الجاد) earn (earned / earned)

Ex: win : (a medal ميدالية / a cup كأس / a race سباق / a competition مسابقة /
a match / a game / an award / a prize) يفوز ب / يكسب

beat : (someone شخص / a team فريق) يهزم

gain : (experience خبرة / information معلومات / Knowledge معرفة) يكتسب
(weight وزن / height طول / speed سرعة) يزداد

earn : money / his living يكسب المال / عيشه (من العمل الجاد)

whenever حينما / عندما Whenever she comes, she brings some presents.

whoever أي شخص / أيا كان Whoever commits a crime should be punished.

wherever أينما / حيثما Wherever he goes, he makes friends.

whatever مهما / أي شيء You can eat whatever you like.

die of يموت من مرض / جوع / عطش die from يموت من جرح / اصابة

wonder يتسأل - يتعجب / عجيبة wander يتجول / يتمشى

politics السياسة / مادة علوم سياسية policy سياسة تعامل / مبدأ

political سياسى (كصفة لإسم) politician سياسى (اسم له مفرد وجمع)

later فيما بعد / بعد ذلك latter الثاني (في الذكر)

a long طويل (كصفة لإسم مفرد) along على طول (الطريق)

advise ينصح (فعل) advice نصيحة (اسم)

practise يمارس (فعل) practice ممارسة (اسم)

school الدراسة / المدرسة للتعلم a school مدرسة (مكان شغل أو بناء)

Language Function

Advice النصيحة

Asking for advice	Giving advice
What advice can you give me?	I think you should..... . Why don't you.....?
What do you think I should do?	If I were you, I would... . What about +ing...?
Can you give me any advice?	I advise you to..... . You could..... .
	I think it is a good idea to..... .
	The best thing you could do would be to..... .

Choose the correct answer :

- 1- Mr Youssef set up an (**association – assassination – accomadation – opera**) to help children in 1968.
- 2- Ali's grandfather was a doctor and worked for the (**ministry – trade – embassy – factory**) of health.
- 3- The teacher told us about the (**ugliness – importance – uselessness – worthless**) of revising before the exam.
- 4- You need a lot of (**intelligence – food – fun – intelligent**) to be good at chess.
- 5- The tourists went on a / an (**industrial – tiny – agricultural – cultural**) tour of Egypt, visiting all the sites.
- 6- My history teacher (**influence – influencing – influenced – influential**) my decision to become a teacher, too.
- 7- Mona's uncle is an expert on science and often (**lectures – structures – attracts – attaches**) at the university.
- 8- Shakespeare's plays have been very (**furless – bitter – useless – influential**). Many writers have used his stories.
- 9- The football team are playing with a lot of (**inconfidence – confident – confidential – confidence**). I think they are going to win!
- 10- Don't lose those forms. They're very (**important – unimportant – useless – bad**).
- 11- What is the (**difference – same – safety – different**) in meaning between where and wear?
- 12- I ran for ten kilometers yesterday and now my legs (**run – break – ache – rotten**).
- 13- Phone me after school and we can have a (**chat – mat – fat – sat**) about the weekend.
- 14- Let's play a game in the (**break – brake – broke – boker**) between lessons.
- 15- The tourists sat by the pool and (**played – faced – focused – see**) the sun.
- 16- The teacher (**demanded – wandered – wounded – handed**) to know why the students were all late.
- 17- We (**plan – plane – plant – planet**) to visit Rome for the holidays next year.

- 18- A week-old moon has the shape of a (**circle – square – angle – semicircle**)
- 19- (**Silence – Silent – Summit – Calm**) means to make someone stop giving their opinions.
- 20- (**Low – Discipline – Rule – Lawyer**) is the practice of making someone obey rules and orders.
- 21- You shouldn't let children do whatever they want, or you will (**see – spoil – sleep – silent**) them.
- 22- A spoiled child often behaves (**good – bad – badly – well**) and annoys others.
- 23- What is the (**import – important – importance – unimportant**) thing about your job?
- 24- Do you often (**encourage – discourage – insult – spoil**) your students to work hard?
- 25- My father said that his teacher (**serious – smart – fatherly – disciplined**) the class easily.
- 26- Nabila (**annoys – hates – spills – spoils**) her children. She gives them lots of money .
- 27- My teacher treats me in a (**father – brother – fatherly – mother**) way.
- 28- (**liars – floors – grounds – layers**) are the several levels of different materials that are on top of each other.
- 29- The (**liar – dishonest – knave – responsible**) is a person who is sensible and can be trusted.
- 30- He's (**joking – fun – serious – seriously**), quiet and doesn't often laugh.
- 31- He's (**joking – fun – serious – seriously**) quiet and doesn't often laugh.
- 32- Mr Nader is (**funny – strict – trivial – series**) as he makes people obey rules and does not let them behave badly.
- 33- It isn't right to (**silence – silent – encourage – courage**) your children.
- 34- The school secretary is (**irresponsible – respected – responsible – awarded**) for sending emails.
- 35- How many (**authors – lawyers – doctors – vets**) of books can you name?
- 36- Many people have grown (**down – up – in – on**) reading the books of Abdel Tawab Youssef.
- 37- Do you think the (**call – ball – demand – make**) for oil will decrease in the future?
- 38- New teachers always come with (**French – flash – fishy – fresh**) ideas.
- 39- I'll hold a party in the (**hour – honour – honest – honourable**) of my father.
- 40- The good teacher should be (**patience – ill – impatient – patient**).
- 41- What are the necessary (**quantities – amounts – qualities – quota**) of a good teacher?
- 42- A good teacher should (**inspire – conspire – despair – insult**) his students.
- 43- Abdel Tawab Youssef (**born – is born – was born – was borne**) in 1928.

- 44- My father always encourages me to take (**place – part – up – down**) in conversations.
- 45- The rich man (**set off – set out – sit up – set up**) an association to help children with disabilities.
- 46- He studied (**policy – politics – political – physical**) science at university.
- 47- He graduated (**from – at – as – in**) 1950 (nineteen fifty).
- 48- He worked (**in – on – for – with**) the ministry of education but six month later his father died.
- 49- He wanted to (**beat – earn – gain – win**) money to send his sister to school.
- 50- He didn't start writing (**when – after – at – until**) 1957.
- 51- He, in 1957, started writing children's stories (**in – at – for – up**) radio and television.
- 52- His stories were very (**success – failure – failed – successful**) and made him famous.
- 53- He won many (**awards – cups – rewards – words**) for his writing.
- 54- Abdel Tawab Youssef died in 2015, (**age – aging – aged- ages**) 87 years.
- 55- He lectured at the University of Ohio about writing for children and the (**import – important – importance – exportant**) of Arabic literature.
- 56- Always show respect to your teachers. Remember that they work hard to help you have a (**success – succeed – successive – successful**) future.
- 57- When I finish school, I'd really like to do something to help other people. What (**advice – device – advise – devise**) can you give me?
- 58- I (**give – achieve – score – reach**) myself goals and plan to achieve them.
- 59- Good (**look – leak – luck – puck**) with your first match tomorrow.
- 60- The head teacher left him (**viewing – leaning – watering – dreaming**) about his new life as a teacher.
- 61- A teacher is (**likes – like – liked – liking**) the layers of the earth.
- 62- (**But – However – Whatever – Why**) level you reach, you can dig deeper to find more layers that are even richer than before.
- 63- When his father died, it was a (**easy – good – difficult – nice**) time for him.
- 64- He wanted to send his sisters to school, (**who – which – where – why**) was unusual at that time.
- 65- He was married (**to – with – from – in**) a son and a daughter.
- 66- The head teacher (**recognized – realized – identified – qualified**) that the young teacher was worried.
- 67- People have translated his books (**for – on – onto – into**) many languages.
- 68- You are very natural (**of – on – with – at**) the students, but strict.
- 69- Leaving lights always on is a / an (**respectable – responsible – irresponsible – irritable**) behaviour.
- 70- (**Whatever – Whenever – Whoever – Wherever**) you do, there is no way to persuade him.

Language Focus

Present perfect simple tense زمن المضارع التام

Have / has + P.P

المضارع التام هو الزمن الوحيد الذي يربط الماضي بالحاضر إذ يستخدم لـ:

1- يعبر عن حدث بدأ في الماضي وما زال موجود حتى الآن :

- Mona **has studied** English for ten years.
- We **have been** at this school since 2012.

2- يعبر عن حدث أنتهى في الماضي وما زالت اثاره موجودة حتى الآن :

- Ahmed **has hurt** his leg, so he can't play football today.

3- يعبر المضارع التام عن أحداث تمت حديثا أو منذ فترة قصيرة :

- Leila isn't here. She's **just** gone out.
- I've **already** finished my first year at university.

4- يعبر المضارع التام عن أحداث لم تحدث من قبل (تحدث لأول مرة) :

- She's **never** played tennis.
- I **haven't** received a reply to my email **yet**.

5- يستخدم المضارع التام للسؤال عن خبرة سابقة أو موقف سابق :

- I **have never** eaten Chinese food. - **Have you ever** ridden a camel?

6- يعبر عن حدث تم في الماضي دون تحديد وقت حدوثه. وعند التحديد نستخدم ماضى بسيط :

- She **has polished** her shoes. - She **polished** her shoes **yesterday**.

7- يدل المضارع التام على حدث متكرر (أى أن ذلك الحدث قابل للحدوث مرة أخرى) :

- Ronaldo has scored a hundred goals. (He can score more.)
- She has been to the cinema twice this week. (and the week isn't over yet.)

- لكن إذا استخدمنا الماضي البسيط مع حدث متكرر فمعنى ذلك أن الحدث توقف :

- He wrote 46 novels. (He stopped writing. / he died)

- يستخدم المضارع التام مع الكلمات الآتية :

**already / just / ever / never / yet / since / for / so far /
up till now/ lately / recently / This morning / This year**

- He **has typed** five letters **so far**.

- كما يستخدم مع التعبيرات الآتية :

It's / This is the first time ever..... / It's / This is the only

In recent years / In the last few years/months

Over the ages / years على مر العصور/ السنين

- It's the first time I have ever been to this place.
- This is the only play I have seen.

Key Words

recently مؤخراً / حديثاً (فى نهاية الجملة المثبتة)

- I have seen Ali many times **recently**.

lately مؤخراً / حديثاً (فى نهاية الجملة المنفية والمثبتة)

- I have / haven't seen Ali **lately**.

never ابدأ / لم يسبق (قبل التصريف الثالث لتنفى الجملة)

- I have **never** seen a lion.

yet من قبل - حتى الآن (فى نهاية الجملة المنفية او السؤال)

- I haven't seen a lion **yet**. - have you seen a lion **yet**?

just (قبل التصريف الثالث فى الجملة المثبتة والسؤال) بالفعل/ توأ **already** فى الحال

- We have **just** seen Ahmed running. - Have you posted the letter **already**?

(لاحظ : السؤال ينتهى ب already عندما يعبر عن تفاجئ أو عدم تصديق ما حدث)

ever سبق - This is **the most exciting** film I have **ever** seen.

- Have you **ever** been to the zoo? - Nothing like this has **ever** happened.

(قبل التصريف الثالث فى السؤال وبعد الفاعل المنفى وبعد صيغة التفضيل وبعد first time)

Since / For

• **since** مدة تحدد بداية الحدث أما **for** يأتى بعدها المدة التى استغرقها هذا الحدث :

• **Since** 2005/ winter/ October / Sunday / 5 o'clock / yesterday / last week (year / month) / this morning / lunch / then / birthday / childhood (المناسبات)

• **for** ... (years/seasons/months/weeks/days/hours) - a (day/week/month/year) - an hour - ages - a fortnight - a long/short time - the last week (year/month)

• **إذا جاء مع since** فعل واحد يكون فى زمن المضارع التام أما إذا جاء مع **since** فاعلين فالفعل الذى يلى **since** يكون ماضى بسيط و الآخر مضارع تام :

- I haven't seen him **since** last week.

- I haven't seen him **since** he left for Cairo.

• **إذا بدأنا ب It's** نستخدم التركيب التالى :

It's + ماضى بسيط مثبت + last + فاعل + since + مدة زمنية

- I haven't seen him for ages. (It's.....) - It's ages **since** I last saw him.

• **لاحظ :**

since + last year, last week,... = **for + the last year, the last week,...**

- I haven't seen him for the last month. = I haven't seen him since last month.

An Important Note

* **S. + have / has been to = ... went and came back** ذهب إلى مكان وعاد منه

Ex: He went to Aswan and came back. (been) - He has been to Aswan.

* **S. + have / has gone to = ... went and didn't come back** ذهب وما زال هناك

Ex: He went to Aswan and he is still there. (has) - He has gone to Aswan.

Choose the correct answer:

- 1- Many people (**grew – have grown – had grown – has grown**) up reading the books of Abdel-Tawab Youssef.
- 2- I (**have just finished – just finish – had just finished – were just finishing**) one of his books, called My Father, An Egyptian Teacher.
- 3- She (**had written – have written – wrote – has written**) a book about why the writer became so successful.
- 4- Since he (**has become – have become – became – become**) famous in Egypt, people have translated his books into many languages.
- 5- His books (**influence – influenced – has influenced – have influenced**) children for many years.
- 6- It's two weeks since we last (**met – have met – had met – has met**).
- 7- This is the most interesting book I have (**never – ever – yet – just**) read .
- 8- Oh! I (**lost – lose – am losing – have lost**) my passport. What should I do?
- 9- Tamer (**had – has had – has – is having**) a lot of health problems since he started living in that polluted city.
- 10- Adel (**hasn't contacted – didn't contact – doesn't contact – hadn't contacted**) me since he left Cairo.
- 11- I have never (**gone – been – seen – visited**) to the zoo before.
- 12- My cousin has lived abroad (**when – for – ago – since**) his childhood.
- 13- Belal is not here. He has (**gone – been – seen – visited**) to the dentist's.
- 14- Omar, (**has – have – did – had**) you read that book I recommended?
- 15- I (**hasn't – haven't – didn't – hadn't**) finished the book yet.
- 16- I started reading the story on Saturday but I (**have been – was – has been – am**) busy since then.
- 17- Shady has been very busy since he (**has begun – begin – began – begins**) working for that charity.
- 18- Kamal, (**Have – Has – Did – Had**) you agreed to do that? - Yes, I have.
- 19- Nothing like this has (**never – lately – ever – just**) happened to me.
- 20- I can't phone my parents as I (**lose – lost – have lost – had lost**) my phone.
- 21- The plane (**just has left – has just leaved – has left just – has just left**). I can see it in the sky!
- 22- Have you (**ever tried – tried ever – never tried – tried never**) English food?
- 23- Many of today's great writers (**have also worked – also work – has also worked – also worked**) as teachers.
- 24- Michael Morpurgo is a famous English writer. He (**write – wrote – has written – is writing**) many books for children.
- 25- He started writing stories for children when he (**has been – have been – had been – was**) a primary school teacher.
- 26- Many of his most famous stories, (**have been made – be made – was made – made**) into successful films.

- 27- Hala can't play tennis because she (**hurt – hurts – has hurt – had hurt**) her hand.
- 28- Basel (**isn't – didn't – wasn't – hasn't been**) hungry because he has eaten a big lunch.
- 29- Radwa doesn't know what flying is like as she (**never flies – has never flown – never flew – had never flown**).
- 30- What (**has – have – had – did**) you never done that you would like to do?
- 31- How long (**did – were – had – have**) you studied English for?
- 32- Since when (**did – were – had – have**) you lived in this home?
- 33**- My brother (**is going – will go – has gone – has been**) to Paris, he came back last week.
- 34- Where is your father? My father (**has been – has gone – had gone – had been**) to Cairo.
- 35- Since the computer was used in schools, remarkable progress in education (**has made – has been made – had made – had been made**).
- 36- My uncle (**is – will be – has been – is being**) to Germany lately.
- 37- You look pale. (**Has anything happened – Will anything happen – had anything happened – Was anything happening**) to you ?
- 38- We haven't seen him (**since – for – from – in**) over a year.
- 39- A long time has passed (**when – because – since – until**) I last saw him.
- 40- She has been to America. This means that she (**is still – is no longer – will be – won't be**) there.
- 41- Something is wrong with his car, so he (**has taken – took – was taken – is being taken**) it to the garage.
- 42- We (**haven't decided – didn't decide – hadn't decided – don't decide**) what to do for the holidays yet.
- 43- I (**enjoy – was enjoying – enjoyed – have enjoyed**) reading novels since I was a young child.
- 44- I (**have had – had – had had – was having**) my own computer for three years now.
- 45- Agatha Christie's books (**have been translated – were being translated – translated – have translated**) into more than 40 languages.
- 46- Ali (**is – has been – is being – had been**) at university for three years. He comes home every weekend.
- 47- Shakespeare (**has written – wrote – had written – was written**) 37 plays.
- 48- We moved to this house two years ago today. So we (**lived – live – has lived – have lived**) here for two years.
- 49- They (**have been – have gone – had gone – gone**) to the USA. They are in Cairo now.
- 50- Have you met the manager (**just – yet – ever – since**)?
- 51- Dalia has practised this hobby (**since – for – yet – recently**) a long time.

- 52- Reham (**visits – has visited – is visiting – visit**) London recently.
- 53- Have you eaten all these bananas (**ever – never – already – since**)?
- 54- They (**were – have gone – have been – had been**) friends all their lives.
- 55- I have known him (**since – when – for – ago**) we joined the university.
- 56- She has (**already – yet – never – ever**) cleaned her room. It looks nice now.
- 57- Adel has graduated from university (**for – since – in – until**) 2003.
- 58- Adel (**has graduated – graduated – gradustes – had graduated**) from university in 2003.
- 59- She has just phoned. She (**phoned – had phoned – has been phoning – phones**) just now.
- 60- It's five hours since she (**has come – come – coming – came**) back home.
- 61- He (**eats – has eaten – had eaten – is eating**) four sandwiches up till now.
- 62- These trees (**grew – grows – will grow – have grown**) phenomenally tall over the years.
- 63- Nawal hasn't studied the present perfect (**already – yet – ago – recent**).
- 64- Hamid's hair is wet as he (**has – had had – has had – had**) a shower.
- 65- I have never eaten shrimps (**ever – by – before – after**).
- 66- It is ages since we (**have read – had heard – heard – was hearing**) some good news.
- 67- You can't talk to Tarek because he (**used to go – had gone – has just gone – goes**) out.
- 68- (**For – In – At – Since**) he became famous, his books have been translated into many languages,
- 69- It's two hours since she (**left – has left – had left – is left**).
- 70- The manager has met many people (**when – on – after – since**) he arrived at his office.
- 71- I haven't heard from my brother (**since – ago – just – for**) his travel.
- 72- We started to live here more than 20 years (**for – ago – since – so far**).
- 73- We have lived here (**for – ago – since – so far**) more than 20 years.
- 74- (**Do schools – Were schools – Had schools been – Have schools been**) wrong to teach everyone in the same way?
- 75- Have you (**never been – yet been – even been – ever been**) in a plane?
- 76- This is the first time we (**had been – have been – went – was going**) to a theatre.
- 77- He will welcome us as soon as we (**arrived – will arrive – arriving – have arrived**).

Exercises on Unit 2

2- Read the following passage, then answer the questions:

Most people know that the first man on the moon was Neil Armstrong in 1969. However since that time, the moon has been visited by eleven other men but they are not so famous. Who were these other space pioneers? In 1969, four

months after Neil Armstrong and his colleague Buzz Aldrin stayed on the surface of the moon for 21 hours, Alan Bean and Pete Conrad spent two days there. Bean is an artist, and is the only person who's able to paint space scenes that he had actually seen. In 1971, Alan Shepard and Edgar Mitchel went on a mission to study earthquakes on the moon (moon-quakes). Shepard also enjoyed a game of golf there: because there is very little gravity, he hit the ball farther than any professional golf player on earth. Seven months later, two more astronauts stayed for nearly three days on the moon. David Scott and James Irwin took along a special vehicle which meant they could travel around. They landed in the moon's mountains for the first time and returned to earth with many moon rocks.

In 1972, John Young and Charles Duke. The moon was last visited at the end of 1972. Eugene Cernan and Harrison Schmitt explored the moon for three days, longer than any other astronaut. Schmitt was a geologist before he became an astronaut and he did a number of scientific experiments there. Before they returned to earth, Cernan wrote his daughter's name on the moon's surface. There is no weather on the moon, so he knew that there was nothing that would wear the letters away. **They** are probably there today! There're now plans to get astronauts to visit the moon again, although nobody knows when this might be.

A- Choose the correct answer:

- 1- Why are Alan Bean's paintings special?
 - a. They were painted on the moon.
 - b. You can only see them on the moon.
 - c. He is the only artist who has been to space.
 - d. They were painted in space.
- 2- Why is it likely that you can still read the name of Eugene Cernan's daughter on the moon today?
 - a. The letters are very big.
 - b. The letters were written in rocks.
 - c. There is little that will remove the letters.
 - d. His colleague was a geologist.
- 3- Why do you think that some of the astronauts played golf and wrote names on the surface of the moon?
 - a. They were very important experiments.
 - b. They wanted to have fun.
 - c. Scientists on earth got them to do these.
 - d. They behaved badly.
- 4- Why do you think that astronauts were sent to the moon?
 - a. To punish them.
 - b. To do scientific experiments.
 - c. To test weightless sports.
 - d. To test zero-gravity living.
- 5- What does the underlined word **they** refer to?
 - a. the astronauts
 - b. the spaceships
 - c. the moon's weather
 - d. the letters on the surface
- 6- What do you think the word **vehicle** means?
 - a. something used to carry people or things.
 - b. a type of spaceship.
 - c. a rocket.
 - d. a type of satellite.

B- Answer the following questions:

- 7- Why do you think that no astronaut has visited the moon since 1972?

- 8- What was Alan Shepard and Edgar Mitchel's mission on the moon?
 9- Do you think that the moon will be visited again in the future? Why/Why not?
 10- How long did Neil Armstrong stay on the moon?

4- Finish the following dialogue:

Ashraf and Wael are waiting at a bus stop.

Ashraf : I've to be in the centre of Cairo in an hour. Where's the bus? It's late!

Wael : 1)..... ? The underground is very fast.

Ashraf : But I'm meeting my friend at a bus stop in the centre.

Wael : 2)..... . Then, you can walk from the underground station to the bus stop in the centre.

Ashraf : Perhaps you're right. I've not used the underground before. Do you know how to buy a ticket?

Wael : 3)..... . Here's what happens. 4)..... .

Ashraf : OK. What do I do after I've bought a ticket from the ticket office?

Wael : 5)..... .

Ashraf : Is it easy to put the ticket into the machine?

Wael : Yes, it is. Then, the gates open and you can walk onto the platform to wait for the train.

Ashraf : 6)..... ? I don't want to go on my own.

Wael : Yes, OK. I'll come with you. Then I can show you what to do.

5- Write a paragraph of about 120 words on (1) of the following:

- 1- The qualities of a good teacher. 2- A teacher who has helped you.

6- A) Translate into Arabic :

- 1- As a teacher he must have some qualities that may help him do well. He must be kind, fatherly, wise, helpful and strict.
 2- A good teacher should be responsible and serious, and care for the needs of students.
 3- We all appreciate the profession of teaching because a good teacher builds a good citizen.
 4- We should honour the great writers and thinkers, especially those who have published distinguished works.

B) Translate into English :

- 1- القراءة مفتاح المعرفة لذا يجب ان نشجع الشباب على القراءة.
 2- يجب أن تتمتع بعض الصفات المهمة مثل الشجاعة والتعاون .
 3- تربية الاطفال لا تعني ان نمنحهم ما يطلبون لأن هذا يفسدهم.
 4- يجب على الشباب أن يقبل العمل فى الأماكن النائية حتى لا يظلوا بلا عمل.
 5- لقد كتب الروائي عبد التواب يوسف العديد من قصص الأطفال المثيرة.
 6- بمجرد أني رأيت الحادث، اتصلت بالشرطة و حضروا علي الفور.
 7- يجب ان تبذل الدولة جهودا كبيرة لرعاية الموهوبين وتنمية مواهبهم.

Unit 3 : The Future of books

Key Vocabulary

available	متاح / متوافر	encyclopedia	موسوعة / دائرة معارف
download	يحمل (من النت / على جهازه)	mixture / combination	خليط / مزيج
enthusiastic	متحمس (صفة)	press	يضغط / يكوي (الملابس)
gadget	جهاز صغير	recycle	يُعيد استخدام / يعيد تصنيع
bleach	يُبيض / مادة مبيضة	roll	يدور / يلف / يتدحرج
paperback (book)	كتاب بغلاف ورقي	roller	اسطوانة (لضغط الأشياء) - رُلة دهان
screen	شاشة	soak	ينقع أو يغمر في سائل
remove	يزيل	trade / commerce	يتاجر / تجارة
reduce	يقلل / يقل	compare	يقارن
replace	يستبدل / يحل محل	button	زرار - زر

Vocabulary

traditional books	الكتب التقليدية	leaf / leaves	ورقة / اوراق النباتات
ordinary books	الكتب التقليدية	hard	خشن / مضطرب
electronic books	الكتب الاكترونية	stationery	الأدوات الكتابية
e-book reader	جهاز لقراءة الكتب	part of history	جزء من التاريخ
upload	يقوم برفع شئ على الانترنت	reclaim/ reclamation	يستصلح/ استصلاح
online x offline	متصل x غير متصل	glue	غراء / يلصق
enthusiast	شخص متحمس (اسم)	collection	مجموعة
bestsellers	الكتب الأفضل بيعا	adapt (to)	يُعدل / يتأقلم
availability	توافر	website	موقع الكتروني
removal	إزالة / نقل	grass	عشب
knowledge bank	بنك المعرفة	enjoyment	متعة
papyrus	ورق البردي	entertainment	تسلية
replacement	بديل / استبدال	publishers	الناشرون
especially	خاصة	public libraries	المكتبات العامة
chemicals	مواد كيميائية	smooth / soft	ناعم / أملس / مصقول
store	يخزن / مخزن	adverts	إعلانات
appearance	مظهر	recycling	إعادة الاستخدام / التصنيع
efficient	كفاء	recycled materials	مواد يُعاد استخدامها
migrate / migration	يهاجر / هجرة	sensibly	بحكمة
cultural visit	زيارة ثقافية	sheet of paper	فرخ ورق
brochure	كتيب	subscribe	يشترك
digital	رقمي	leaflet	نشرة / كتيب
ensure	يضمن	signature	ملزمة / توقيع

confirm / type	يؤكد / يطبع	course	منهج / مقرر دراسي
Nile valley	وادي النيل	process	عملية طبيعية
sandstorm	عاصفة رملية	imagination	خيال
comparable	يمكن مقارنته	book / mark	يحجز / يصحح

Prepositions and Expressions

press ... together	يضغط ... معاً	go wrong / break down	يتعطل
good for the environment	مفيد للبيئة	make paper	يصنع الورق
enthusiastic about / for	متحمس بشأن	go online	يستخدم الانترنت
download onto	يحمل على جهاز خاص به	turn the pages	يقلب الصفحات
replace ... with	يستبدل ... بـ	everyday life	الحياة اليومية
Be replaced by	يتم استبداله بـ	produce from	ينتج من
cut down trees	يقطع الأشجار	keep up with	يوكب / يساير
cut down prices	يقلل الأسعار	rely / depend / count on	يعتمد على
cut by	يقلل بنسبة	remove from	يزيل من
complain to...about	يشكو الى...من	special in	مميز في
common for	شائع لدى	make predictions	يتنبأ بـ
mix with chemicals	يخلط بمواد كيميائية	break ... into pieces	يقطع إلى قطع
pass through	يمر من خلال	draw / store on	يرسم / يخزن على
On the other hand	من الناحية الاخرى	the same size as	في نفس حجم ...

Antonyms

available	متاح	unavailable	غير متاح
up-to-date	حديث	out-of-date	بطل استعماله / قديم
paperback	ذو غلاف ورقي	hardback / hardcover	ذو غلاف مقوي
remove	يزيل	add	يضيف
dry	جاف / يجفف	wet	مبلل
mix / combine	يخلط / يمزج	separate	يفصل

Derivatives

Verb	Noun	Adjective
download يُحمِل	download تحميل	downloadable يمكن تحميله
enthuse يتحمس بشأن	enthusiasm الحماسة	enthusiastic متحمس
mix يخلط / يمزج	mixture خليط / مزيج	mixed مختلط
press يضغط	press ضغطة	pressed مضغوط
recycle يعيد استخدام	recycling إعادة الاستخدام	recyclable يمكن إعادة استخدامه
reduce يقلل	reduction تقليل / خفض	reduced مخفض
imagine يتخيل	imagination تخيل	imaginative مبدع

Words go together

press conference	مؤتمر صحفي	press release	بيان صحفي
reliable sources	مصادر موثوق بها	economic dimension	البعد الاقتصادي
enormous challenge	تحدي هائل	download files	يقوم بتحميل ملفات
heavy burdens	أعباء ثقيلة	an inspired leader	قائد أو زعيم ملهم
casual observation	ملاحظة عابرة	exceptional	استثنائي
work for the good of	يعمل لصالح	economic pressures	ضغوط اقتصادية

Read the following carefully

Listening

Kasim: Hi, Ziad. What are you looking at?

Ziad : Hi, Kasim. It's an e-book reader. I'm going to read an e-book on it. It's a novel by William Golding.

Kasim: What are e-books?

Ziad : They are electronic books. I read one last week. Now, I am really enthusiastic about the idea of using them to read all my books.

Kasim: How do you read them?

Ziad : Well, you download them from the internet onto an e-book reader, like this one. As you can see, it is a small computer about the same size as a paperback. It has a screen like the page of a book. So you read the book on the screen and turn the pages by pressing buttons or by touching the screen.

Kasim: But surely you can't download all kinds of books?

Ziad : You can download many kinds of books, but in the future, they'll probably publish every new book as an ordinary book and as an e-book.

Kasim: That sounds amazing, but if you have to pay for the reader and the download, that must be expensive.

Ziad : At the moment e-book readers are quite expensive, but I'm sure the publishers will reduce the price when more people buy them. New gadgets are always expensive when only a few people are buying them.

Kasim: Do you think publishers will ever replace traditional books completely?

Ziad : No, I don't think so. But when more books are available online, I think we'll read most bestsellers as e-books. On the other hand, I'm sure publishers won't replace some kinds of books.

Kasim: Yes, books that are large or where pictures are important.

Ziad : E-books are good for the environment, too.

Kasim: Are they?

Ziad : Yes, think of all the paper that we can save.

Kasim: It's a great idea.

Ziad : This is my cousin's e-book reader, but I really like it, so my father **is buying me** one for my next birthday.

Kasim: There's a programme about the future of books on TV. The programme **starts at** seven o'clock **tomorrow evening**. I think **I'll watch** that programme. **Will you watch** it with me?

Ziad : I'd like to, but I can't. **I'll be reading** tomorrow evening. I want to finish the book by William Golding.

Kasim: You've read a lot of his books, haven't you?

Ziad : Yes. After I finish this book, **I'll have read** all of his novels.

Reading

The History of paper

In Ancient Egypt, people used a type of tall grass called papyrus. It grew in the Nile valley, and people **used it for writing** and **drawing on**. Before people could use it, they **soaked** the leaves of the grass **in water**, pressed them together and then dried in the sun.

The Chinese made the first paper two thousand years ago. In the eighth century, Arab travellers who **traded with China** learned **how to** make it, too. At first, paper was very expensive because it **was made from cotton**, but later it was made from wood and so became much cheaper.

To **make paper**, people broke the wood into small pieces which they **mixed with** chemicals and then bleached. They then removed water from the mixture. The mixture passes through hot rollers to produce continuous pieces of dry paper.

Every year, we cut down **millions of trees** to make new paper. Fortunately, the type of tree that gives us the best wood for making paper grows very quickly, but you can also recycle old paper. We make most of today's newspapers and magazines **from recycled paper**.

For hundreds of years, we have also used an enormous amount of paper to produce books, especially very large books like encyclopedias. Now, you can read encyclopedias and other books on e-books. You can also read books online, on websites such as **the Egyptian Knowledge Bank (EKB)**.

Some people think that soon everybody'll have a computer or a phone and we will get all our information from the internet. They believe that we won't need libraries and that **paper books will become part of history**.

Definitions

available	something that you can get , buy or use.
button	a small part on a machine that you press to make it start
enthusiastic	showing a lot of interest and excitement about something
gadget	a small tool or machine that helps you do something
soak	to cover something with liquid for a period of time.
reduce	to make something become less in size, amount, price, etc...

compare	to examine things to find out how they are similar or different		
replace	to use a different person or thing instead of the one you use now.		
bleach	to make something white or lighter in colour by using chemicals.		
encyclopedia	a large book that contains facts about many subjects.		
mixture	something made by mixing two or more different substances.		
press	to push something firmly, hard and steadily .		
roller	a round piece of wood or metal that can be rolled.		
paperback	a book with a soft paper cover	book	to arrange to have a thing
remove	Take something away	trade	buy/sell large quantities of goods
online	connected to the internet	offline	not connected to the internet
download	take things from the internet	upload	add to the internet
leaves	the flat green parts of a plant	type	a kind of person or thing

Language Notes

made of (مصنوع من مادة لا يتغير شكلها بعد التصنيع)	made from (مصنوع من مادة يتغير شكلها بعد التصنيع)
Ex: She bought a bag made of leather.	Bread is made from flour.

paper (writing material) ورق (للكتابة)	papers (newspapers) صحف
a paper (a newspaper) صحيفة	papers (documents) وثائق / مستندات

Ex: Dictionaries are usually printed on **paper**. Al Ahram is a daily **paper**.
The photo was on the front page of all the **papers**.
The border guards stopped me and asked to see my **papers**.

fit يناسب (من حيث المقاس)	That jacket fits you perfectly.
suit يناسب (من حيث الشكل)	That blue shirt suits you. You look nice in it.
match يتماشى مع (للأشياء)	Does this shirt match these trousers?

soak in ينعق	soak up يمتص - يتشرب
Ex: To get these stains out of you shirt, you have to soak it in hot water.	Mother put a cloth on the floor to soak up water.

electric يعمل بالكهرباء (الأشياء التي بداخلها كهرباء)
electrical يتعامل مع الكهرباء (الأشخاص والمتعلقة بالكهرباء)
Ex: Don't touch electric wires. They're dangerous. My brother is an electrical engineer.

be used for + v. + ing يستخدم في	be used to + مصدر يستخدم لـ
Ex: Wood is used for making furniture.	Wood is used to make furniture.

make + مصدر + مفعول + صفة يجعل / يجبر على
Ex: The terrible accident made her cry . Her success made her happy .

ever تستخدم في الأسئلة (في المستقبل البسيط مثل المضارع التام)

Ex: Do you think e-books will **ever** replace traditional books completely?

يفضل (للتفضيل) مصدر + **would rather** | يجب أن (للتوصية) مصدر + **had better**

Ex: You'd **better** go home now before the rain starts.

He'd **rather** die than let me think he needed help.

تماما **altogether** | معا / سويا **together**

Ex: You mix all the dry ingredients **together** before you add the milk.

It's all right working with him, but living with him is different **altogether**.

مفيد - مناسب لـ **good for** | عطوف علي **good to** | ماهر في **good at**

أفعال الحواس اذا جاء بعدها صفة تترجم بمعنى يبدو **sounds amazing**

- هناك كلمات تسمى (Homographs) يختلف معناها باختلاف استخدامها كاسم أو كفعل :

mark	يُصَحِّح	The teacher marked his homework.
mark	أثر، علامة	There was a mark on his white shirt.
book	كتاب	type يطبع
book	يحجز	type نوع
leave	يغادر	play يلعب
leaves	أوراق الأشجار	play مسرحية
tear	يمزق	press يضغط
tears	دموع	press صحافة
		suit يناسب
		suit بدلة

- هناك كلمات تسمى (Homophones) تتشابه في النطق و تختلف في المعنى و الهجاء :

It's time for lunch.	The project came to its conclusion.				
hair	heir	eye	I	be	bee
buy	by	here	hear	hour	our
hole	whole	know	No	meat	meet
one	won	right	write	sea	see
son	sun	to	two	weak	week

fact	حقيقة	fiction	خيال
adapt	يتأقلم	adopt	يتبنى
press	ضغطة	stress	الضغط (التوتر)
quiet	هادئ (صفة)	quite	الى حد ما (قبل صفة)
part of	جزء من كل	a part of	جزء منفصل بذاته
trade in	يتاجر في (بضاعة)	trade with	يتاجر مع (شخص/دولة)
everyday	صفة تأتي قبل اسم	every day	ظرف تأتي في نهاية جملة
process	عملية طبيعية عادية	operation	عملية جراحية / تشغيل

Language Functions

Questioning sources of information

Can you prove / confirm that?	I don't / can't believe that.
What's the reason / source of information for that?	It can't / must be true.
What proof do they have that this is real / true?	I think that's a lie / real.

Choose the correct answer:

- 1- Mum has a special (**budget – badge – gadget – bondage**) for cutting vegetables.
- 2- Ali is really (**enthusiastic – criminal – soaking – faulty**) about his university course. He can't wait for the beginning of the term.
- 3- I'm going to (**write – download – promise – admit**) some information from the internet for my school project.
- 4- The television isn't on. Can you press the (**wire – button – screen – page**).
- 5- This novel is not (**reliable – capable – avoidable – available**) as an e-book yet, but you'll be able to get it next year.
- 6- The best thing about a / an (**e-book – paperback – e-shop – paper shop**) is that you can carry a whole library and read from it at any time.
- 7- My father is a football (**enthusiasm – enthusiast – enthusiastic – enthuse**). He plays and watches it on TV whenever he can.
- 8- Her brother has not shown any (**enthusiasm – enthusiast – enthusiastic – enthuse**) for any sport of any kind.
- 9- That play is very popular. You'd better check the (**ability – availability – advisability – ambiguity**) of tickets.
- 10- I wanted to complain to the manager of the shop, but he was (**available – unavailable – unavoidable – unbelievable**).
- 11- My first computer didn't work, so they sent me a (**replace – replacement – place – placement**).
- 12- The air is cleaner now because there has been a (**reducing – reeducation – reduce – reduction**) in the use of cars.
- 13- My exam results were (**compared – comparing – compare – compareful**) to my brother's. They were almost the same.
- 14- There has always been a lot of (**mixture – trade – play – works**) between Egypt and Europe.
- 15- After the storm, workmen (**removed – increased – reused – recycled**) a lot of sand from the roads.
- 16- I took a great photo of the Pyramids, and I'm (**overloading – downloading – offloading – uploading**) it onto a website now.
- 17- I love books, so I often buy them (**online – outline – offline – withline**).

- 18- I can't buy anything on the internet because the computer is (**online – outline – offline – withline**).
- 19- Before you can cook these beans, you have to (**bleach – roll – sink – soak**) them for three hours.
- 20- The story is an interesting (**paste – mixer – structure – mixture**) of fact and fiction.
- 21- You can (**press – bleach – fix – mix**) white shirts to keep them looking clean.
- 22- A / An (**process – mixture – operation – development**) is something made by mixing two or more things together.
- 23- To (**repeat – retreat – renovate – recycle**) is to put used objects through a process so that they can be used again.
- 24- A (**roller – ruler – boiler – beaker**) is a round piece of wood or metal that can be rolled.
- 25- To (**stick – shrink – soak – remove**) means to cover something with liquid for a period of time.
- 26- Today, paper, plastic and glass can all be (**recycled – replaced – recited – retarded**).
- 27- Oil and water don't (**fix – soak – drink – mix**). Even if you shake them together, they separate into two layers.
- 28- In ancient Egypt, (**paper – papyrus – leather – bush**) was used for writing and drawing.
- 29- Papyrus was (**soaked – dried – evaporated – expanded**) in water to make the reeds stick together.
- 30- Paper was very (**cheap – priceless – expensive – valueless**) because it was made from cotton or linen.
- 31- Arab travellers traded (**from – in – at – with**) different things.
- 32- Most of our newspapers and magazines are made from (**recycle – recycled – recycling – cycled**) paper.
- 33- Arab travelers learned (**what – how – which – who**) to make paper from the Chinese.
- 34- When paper was made (**of – from – in – at**) wood, it became much cheaper.
- 35- A / An (**encyclopaedia – diary – biography – autobiography**) is a set of books which deals with every branch of human knowledge.
- 36- We can benefit from old newspaper by (**recycling – making – using – cleaning**).
- 37- The vase (**pulled – rolled – pushed – walked**) off the edge of the table and smashed.
- 38- You can get this novel as an (**e-book – e-mail – e-learning – e-commerce**) from the bookshop over there.
- 39- When you are reading an e-book, you can (**burn – wrap – soak – turn**) the pages by pressing buttons or by touching the screen.

- 40- Wood is used (**to – for – with – from**) making paper.
- 41- (**Recycling – Receiving – Reappearing – Recording**) is definitely good for the environment.
- 42- When more and more people buy something, the price (**goes up – goes down – goes away – goes out**).
- 43- Papyrus was used for (**shrinking – writing – counting – calculating**) and drawing on.
- 44- Every year, millions of trees are cut (**in – of – with – down**) to make paper.
- 45- The first paper was (**done – gone – made – looked**) by the Chinese two thousand years ago.
- 46- Do you think that e-books will (**never – ever – yet – hard**) replace traditional books?
- 47- Arab travellers who traded (**in – with – by – from**) China learned how to make paper.
- 48- The success of this project relies (**with – about – of – on**) everyone's effort.
- 49- I'd rather (**has – have – having - have had**) a hot drink.
- 50- The television picture is really clear. You have an enormous (**steam – scream – screen – beam**).
- 51- To start the machine, just give this button a (**bless – brass – press – stress**).
- 52- Grants are (**deniable – available – collectable – enviable**) for students who have high grades.
- 53- When we use less paper, hundreds of forests will be (**destroyed – demolished – built – saved**).
- 54- This television is so old. It's (**up to date – birthrate – birthdate – out of date**).
- 55- More than two hundred thousand copies of this novel have been sold. It's a (**bestseller – best selling – best sold – best buyer**).
- 56- You should be (**sufficient – efficient – inficient – ancient**) to promote in your work.
- 57- The surface of a mirror is (**rough – smooth – hard – difficult**).
- 58- The (**reference – encyclopedia – brochure – bookture**) is a small book which you can carry easily in your pocket.
- 59- The Holy Qu'ran can be found here as a (**weakback – hardback – lookback – textback**).
- 60- The earth soaks (**in – up – on – of**) most rain water.
- 61- I (**boxed – booked – made – devised**) a single ticket to Alex yesterday.
- 62- We will (**replace – place – price – pass**) any damaged goods.
- 63- Books can be read (**electric – electronic – electronical – electronically**).
- 64- You shouldn't (**fix – ox – fox – mix**) with bad people.
- 65- The news (**sounds – voices – amazes – cries**) terrible.

Language Focus

Future time

• هناك طرق مختلفة للتعبير عن المستقبل لذلك لاحظ هنا ان جميع الكلمات الدالة علي المستقبل (tomorrow , next , in the future) تكتب مع الاشكال المختلفة للمستقبل وليست خاصة بشكل واحد منهم فقط .

1) Future Simple زمن المستقبل البسيط

will / shall + المصدر

لاحظ استخدام will مع كل الضمائر واستخدام shall مع I / we فقط

1- يستخدم المستقبل البسيط مع كلمات تدل على المستقبل مثل :

next year / in the future / soon / in a year / tomorrow / soon

- OK. I'll meet you tomorrow morning. - Lunch will be ready soon.

2- يستخدم المستقبل البسيط غالبا مع الكلمات الآتية :

I expect / I'm sure / I think / probably / possibly / I hope / I believe / I feel /

Perhaps / I know / I wonder / I suppose / I fear / I'm afraid

- I expect he will win the first prize. - I don't think she will get the job.

3- يستخدم المستقبل البسيط مع If في الحالة الأولى :

- If it rains, we will stay at home.

4- يستخدم المستقبل البسيط بعد الروابط الزمنية اذا جاء بعدها مضارع بسيط أو تام :

مضارع بسيط أو تام + when / as soon as / after / before / till / until + مستقبل / أمر

- I'll leave the office after I finish (have finished) my work.

- I'll finish my work before I leave (have left) the office.

- I won't leave the office until I finish (have finished) my work.

5- استخدامات خاصة لـ will :

1- تعبير will عن حقائق مستقبلية (future facts)

- I'll be 16 next week. - This school will be 50 years old next year.

2- تستخدم will للتنبؤ بدون دليل عن أحداث مستقبلية (predictions)

- I think it will be hot today. - He'll probably be away for a week.

3- تعبير will عن قرار سريع (quick decision)

- That's the phone. I'll answer it. - Someone's at the door. I'll see who it is.

4- تستخدم will في العرض (offer) و كذلك في الطلب (request)

- I'll go shopping with you if you like. (Offer)

- Will you look at my homework tonight, please? (Request)

5- تستخدم will للتهديد (threat) و الوعد (promise)

- I'll resign if I don't get a pay rise.

6- تستخدم للتعبير عن تحذير من شيء قد يحدث في المستقبل

- Be careful or / otherwise you will fail the test.

2) am / is / are + going to + inf.

1- تستخدم going to للتعبير عن خطط (plans) و نوايا (intentions) و قرارات مدروسة (decisions) :

- They've got the tickets. They're **going to** fly to England!
- We're saving up because we're **going to** buy a car.
- I'm **going to** make some coffee. Do you want some?
- My sister **is going to apply** for a place at medical school.
- When I get home, I'm **going to watch** the news on TV.

2- تستخدم going to للتنبؤ بحدث في المستقبل و يوجد له دليل الآن :

- The other team's players **are very big**. It's **going to** be a difficult match.
- I just read the weather report. It's **going to be** sunny.

3- تستخدم للتعبير عن تحذير من شيء على وشك الوقوع (ويعد هذا النوع من التحذير وكذلك الأمر دليل ضمنى اذا جاء معه تنبؤ) :

- Be careful! / Watch out. The cup **is going to** fall down.
- Switch off the gas. The milk **is going to** boil.

لاحظ أن : **Do you intend to + inf. = Are you going to + inf.**

- **Are you going to** buy a new car? = **Do you intend to** buy a new car?
- **Is she going to** take the test? = **Does she intend to** take the test?

لاحظ أيضاً :

* يمكن استخدام I think مع am/ is/are going to +inf في حالة ذكر الدليل على التنبؤ :

- The sky is very cloudy ,I think it's going to rain

* يمكن التعبير عن التخطيط او النية بهذا الشكل ويساوي am/is/are going to + inf :

- My plans are / I plan to + inf / I intend to +inf / I decided to +inf

3) The Present Continuous زمن المضارع المستمر

- يعبر المضارع المستمر عن حدث في المستقبل تم الترتيب له و هو محدد (و خاصة مع أفعال السفر و العمل والمقابلات والزيارات و الأجازات المستقبلية والحفلات)

- The basketball team **are playing** two games next week.
- I'm **going** home in half an hour. (I've arranged it with the boss.)
- **She's flying** to India in the summer. (She's arranged that)
- I'm **not doing** anything tomorrow. (I've arranged that)

- لاحظ انه ليس شرطاً استخدام اي تعبيرات من السابقة لكي نستخدم المضارع المستمر ولكن يكفي أن يكون مضمون الجملة ان هذا الامر يلزمه ترتيبات مسبقة ولا يتم الا بها.

- We **are having** a party tomorrow .

- لاحظ الفرق بين الجملتين :

- We are saving money. We **are going to buy** a car .
- We have saved money. We **are buying** a car next Monday .

في الاولى مازال الامر في مرحلة الخطة او القرار و في الثانية انتهينا من الاجراء المطلوب للشراء.

- في بعض الاحيان يمكن استخدام am / is / are going to + inf والمضارع المستمر على حد سواء بدون وجود اختلاف :

- My friend and I are watching / are going to watch the match tonight.

* اما اذا كانت الجملة بالضمير ا فقط مع افعال مثل مشاهدة التلفزيون :

- I am going to watch TV tonight. - I am watching TV tonight (X)

الجملة السابقة تعبر عن نية ولا يمكن اعتبارها ترتيب لعدم وجود طرف مع الضمير ا

- في حالة الخطط (plans) لعمل شيء في المستقبل تم تحديد مواعيد استخدامه :

- am / is / are going to + inf او present continuous (am/is/are + V.ing)

- في حالة الجمل التي تعبر عن القيام بزيارة تكتب في المضارع المستمر لان الزيارات لا يتبأ بها ولكن يرتب لها :

- I'm visiting my uncle tomorrow .

- I have **just** decided → will + inf

- I have decided → am/is/are going to + inf

4) The Present Simple زمن المضارع البسيط

- يعبر المضارع البسيط عن حدث مؤكد في المستقبل بسبب جدول مواعيد مثل وسائل المواصلات و السينما و المسرح و المدرسة و جداول الامتحانات والدورات والحفلات :

- The course **starts** in October. - The train **leaves** at six o'clock tomorrow.

لاحظ :

- I have booked the tickets. I'm travelling to London tomorrow .

- I have booked the tickets. My plane takes off at 3.50 tomorrow .

5) The Future Continuous زمن المستقبل المستمر

- يتكون المستقبل المستمر من (will / may + be + v. + ing) و يعبر عن حدث سوف

يكون مستمرا في وقت محدد في المستقبل ويستخدم في الاعتذارات في المستقبل بمدة :

(وعلاماته هي أي كلمة تدل على المستقبل + فترة زمنية محددة)

- I can't visit you because I will / may be doing my homework this evening.

- Don't contact me at 4 o'clock tomorrow. **I'll be driving** to the airport then.

6) The Future Perfect زمن المستقبل التام

will / shall have + PP.

- ويدل على أن شيء سيكون قد تم قبل وقت معين في المستقبل ويستخدم هذا الزمن عادة مع الكلمات الدالة على المستقبل مسبوقة بكلمة **by** :

(1) By (the year) 2100 / By tomorrow morning / By next October

(2) By the end of (3) This time next week (4) In two years' time,

(5) By the time / Before / When / After + present simple → Future Perfect

- By the end of next year, the government **will have built** a new school here.

- By 2050, electric cars **will have replaced** petrol cars.

- By the time the exam begins, **I'll have revised** everything.

- I haven't seen Ali for 5 years. I'm sure he'll have gained a lot of weight. لاحظ :

☒ **Choose the correct answer:**

- 1- There are no clouds in the sky today. I think it (**will be – is going to be – is being – will have been**) very hot.
- 2- I predict that in the future mobile phones (**will be – is going to be – is being – will have been**) much smaller.
- 3- There's a book club meeting after school and everyone (**will go – are going – is going to go – will be going**) there.
- 4- The train to Cairo is on platform four and it (**leave – leaves – will leave – is leaving**) in thirty minutes.
- 5- Next year, my grandpa (**will be – is going to be – is being – is**) 75 years old!
- 6- Those bags look heavy so I (**carry – am going to carry – am carrying – will carry**) them for you.
- 7- At one o'clock tomorrow, I (**will eat – am going to eat - will be eating – will have eaten**) lunch with my friends.
- 8- By ten o'clock tonight, I (**will finish – am going to finish - will be finishing – will have finished**) all my homework.
- 9- Experts think that Cairo (**will grow – will be growing – will have grown – is going to grow**) by more than half a million people next year.
- 10- We (**will have – are having – will have had – are going to have**) a family party on Saturday. Would you like to come?
- 11- Our last lesson (**will finish – am going to finish – will be finishing – finishes**) at two o'clock this afternoon.
- 12- There are a lot of people in the room. It (**will be – is going to be – is being – will have been**) difficult to find a chair.
- 13- Look, there's a sandstorm. I (**close – am going to close – am closing – will close**) the windows.
- 14- I haven't seen my cousin in England for five years. I'm sure she (**will grow – is going to grow – is growing – will have grown**) a lot!
- 15- I (**will read – am going to read – will be reading – read**) an e-book on global warming.
- 16- I'm sure the publishers (**will reduce – am going to reduce – will be reducing – reduces**) the price when more people buy the book.
- 17- My father (**buy – is buying – bought – will be buying**) me a computer for my next birthday.
- 18- The programme starts at seven o'clock this evening. I think I(**will watch – am going to watch – am watching – watch**) it.
- 19- Will you watch this film with me tomorrow evening? – Sorry, I (**will read – am going to read – will be reading – am reading**).
- 20- After I finish this book, I (**will read – will have read – will be reading – am reading**) all of his novels.

- 21- I can't talk at the moment. I (**am doing – will have done – will do – do**) my homework.
- 22- I can't see you later this evening. I (**will be done – will have done – will do – am doing**) my homework.
- 23- There's a good film on TV tonight. It (**finish – finishes – will finish – is finishing**) at ten o'clock.
- 24- There's a good film on TV tonight. I think that it (**finish – finishes – will finish – is finishing**) at ten o'clock.
- 25- A: We're going to have fish for dinner. B: I think we (**will have – are having – will have had – are going to have**) meat for dinner.
- 26- Hello, Ali. I (**will go – am going – go – goes**) to the airport in a minute. Perhaps we can meet when I'm back
- 27- I (**fly – will be flying – will fly – 'm flying**) to Paris later this morning. My plane leaves at ten o'clock.
- 28- (**Shall you do – Do you do – Are you doing – Will you do**) anything next Saturday?
- 29- My family (**will take – are taking – take – takes**) me out today for passing my exams.
- 30- I (**am going to apply – will apply – apply – will be applying**) to study Medicine at Assiut University.
- 31- When I finish my course at University, I (**will probably work – am probably working – probably work – will probably be working**) in a hospital.
- 32- When he finishes in November, he thinks he (**will have walked – is going to walk – will walk – is going to walk**) 400 kilometres.
- 33- It's arranged. We (**are going to – will go – go – shall go**) the Red Sea this summer.
- 34- I think my brother (**is – is going to be – is being – will be**) a doctor. He's very clever.
- 35- He (**'ll fly – 's going to fly – 's fown – 'll be flying**) to London tomorrow. He's got his ticket.
- 36- We won't start the meeting until you (**arrives – had arrived – will arrive – arrive**).
- 37- (**Are you playing – Do you play – Shall you play – Do you go to play**) tennis after school today?
- 38- I've decided that I (**am going to tidy – am tidying – tidies – tidy**) my room this morning.
- 39- I can't see you tomorrow as we (**visit – will be visiting – visits – is visiting**) our relatives.
- 40- I just read the weather report. It (**will be – is – is being – is going to be**) cold tomorrow.
- 41- Watch out! The baby (**is going to – will – would – is**) fall.

- 42- I (**will finish – have finished – will be finishing – will have finished**) my post-graduate studies in five years' time.
- 43- She won't go shopping (**when – as soon as – until – by**) she has dusted the furniture.
- 44- I'm afraid that my plane (**won't take – doesn't take – aren't taking – won't be taking**) off on the appointed time..
- 45- I am studying medicine. I (**may be – am going to be – am being – will be**) a doctor.
- 46- The new road (**won't be finished – won't have finished – won't be finishing – has finished**) until the year 2015.
- 47- Perhaps they (**are visiting – are going to visit – will visit – may visit**) us next Saturday.
- 48- Somebody is knocking on the door. I (**am going – will go – have gone – am go**) and open it.
- 49- What are your plans for tomorrow? – I (**am going to play – play – have played – will play**) tennis with a friend.
- 50- He's driving at breakneck speed. He (**has – would have – is going to have – is having**) an accident.
- 51- (**Will you – Are you going to – Do you – Should you**) help me with this heavy bag, please?
- 52- Don't worry. I (**lend – am lending – will lend – should lend**) you the money you need.
- 53- Don't phone me at 8.00 a.m. tomorrow. I (**drive – will be driving – have driven – would drive**) the kids to school then.
- 54- Look at those black clouds. It (**rains – is raining – is going to rain – isn't raining**).
- 55- Turn the gas off quickly. The milk (**will boil – boils – is going to boil – boil**) over.
- 56- The water is boiling. I (**will turn – am going to turn – am turning – turn**) the gas off.
- 57- Shall we meet at the club tonight? – Ok, (**I'll see – I'm going to see – I'm seeing – I see**) you there at 10 o'clock.
- 58- I'm not at work tomorrow. I (**will go – go – am going – have gone**) to Cairo on business.
- 59- I can't possibly see you this afternoon. Sorry, I (**am meeting – will meet – meet – am going to have met**) my father at the airport.
- 60- It's my father's birthday next week. He (**is – is being – is going to be – will be**) 40 next Sunday.
- 61- By the end of the month, I (**shall have taken – take – am taking – takes**) all my exams.
- 62- I (**will leave – leave – leaves – won't leave**) until he comes.

- 63- She (**is going to become – am becoming – will become – becomes**) an archaeologist when she leaves university. That's her plan.
- 64- As soon as he (**finish – will finish – finishes – had finished**) the project, he will go abroad.
- 65- I need to get fit, so I've made a decision. I (**am going to do – will be doing – am doing – do**) more exercise.
- 66- I feel dizzy. I think I (**will – am – am going to – will be**) fall down.
- 67- This time tomorrow, I (**will sleep – am going to sleep – am sleeping – will be sleeping**). Don't contact me.
- 66- By the time he (**had come – comes – is coming – will come**) back home, I will have finished all the exercises.
- 67- I (**will shoot – am shooting – am going to shoot – shoot**) you if you come any closer.
- 68- There is a hole in the bottom of the boat. I think it (**will sink – am sinking – is going to sink – sinks**).
- 69- She intends to (**visit – am going to visit – visiting – visited**) her aunt next Friday.

Exercises on Unit 3

2- Read the following passage, then answer the questions:

The Chinese invented paper, and they were also the first to use paper bank notes for money. Before paper notes were invented in the seventh century, wealthy Chinese traders had used metal coins. These had a hole in the middle so that traders could carry them on pieces of material. But these were very heavy to carry. As a result, traders left the money with someone they trusted. Instead, they carried a piece of paper which said how much money they had. The trader could use this paper note to promise anyone that they could pay for the goods that they wanted to buy.

People in Europe only started to use paper bank notes in the seventeenth century. In England, the King needed money to help fight a war with France. Banks encouraged people to leave money with **them** and gave handwritten notes saying how much money they had left. The notes said, "I promise to pay the **bearer** the sum of ... " and you can still see the same words on English notes today. Bank workers continued to hand write notes until 1853, when the first notes were printed.

The paper used for bank notes is usually made from a mixture of paper and cotton, and sometimes other materials. Although these other materials make the notes stronger than normal paper, most bank notes only last for about two years. For this reason, some countries tried using plastic notes in 1983. However, the first plastic notes in England were not very successful because the ink came off the notes onto people's hands! Five years later, in 1988, Australia successfully

used plastic notes for the first time. Today, many countries use plastic notes, which are stronger than paper notes, last longer and are harder to copy.

A- Choose the correct answer:

- 1- Why did Chinese traders first use notes instead of coins?
a) As the coins were too heavy to carry. b) As coins had holes in them.
c) As traders could not trust everyone. d) As they preferred paper.
- 2- Why did banks in England first want people to leave their money with them?
a) The King needed money to fight a war. b) People preferred notes to coins.
c) People wanted their money to be safe. d) Banks opened for the first time.
- 3- Why were notes handwritten until 1853?
a) It was cheaper this way. b) It was faster this way.
c) There was not any technology to print them before this time.
d) It was hard to copy the handwriting.
- 4- What is the main idea of the text?
a) Why we use money. b) Why we use banks.
c) The history of paper bank notes. d) The history of trade.
- 5- What does the underlined word **them** refer to?
a) the King's men. b) the men in France.
c) the people who had the money. d) the banks.
- 6- What does the word **bearer** mean?
a) someone who works in a bank. b) a Chinese trader.
c) someone who carries something. d) someone who works for the King.

B- Answer the following questions:

- 7- When and where were paper bank notes first used?
- 8- Why was there a hole in the metal coins invented by the Chinese?
- 9- Do you think people will continue to use paper bank notes in the future or will there be a different way of exchanging money? Explain.
- 10- Do you think that more countries will use plastic notes in the future? Why?

4- Finish the following dialogue :

Zeinab and Riham who are planning a school project

Zeinab : It says here that because Australia is moving north every year , sat navs can't find important places

Riham : 1) It can't be true .

Zeinab : No , this is real news . It is not fake .

Riham : 2)

Zeinab : I can prove it because it is on a website of an organization that I can trust . Do you think that I should write about this for my school project?

Riham : Yes , 3)

Zeinab : I agree it will be interesting . How do you think I should start ?

Riham : 4)

Zeinab : Ok I will start by describing why it is moving north .

Riham : You should definitely include where you got the information, too.

5)

Zeinab : It is a website called "True facts about Australia " 6)

Riham : That's good idea. I will see if I can find other important information on the same website.

5- Write an e-mail to a friend of about (120 words) on one of the following:

Your name is Nour. Your friend's name is Wessam .Her / His address is Wessam@newmail

- a) a person who has inspired you .
- b) websites you should use to find reliable information.

6- A) Translate into Arabic :

- 1- Waleed was tired this evening because he had played tennis all morning.
- 2- The wise educational policy directs education towards fulfilling the needs of society. It also deals with its current and future problems.
- 3- Peace gives us a golden chance to carry out useful projects as it saves money spent on wars and destructive weapons.
- 4- In peace times, money can be used for building new factories, improving health care and solving the problems of housing and transport.
- 5- The government does its best to enable the Egyptian citizen to face the high cost of living.
- 6- I wish I had had time to read more novels when I was younger.
- 7- Your skin might burn if you sit in the sun without using sun cream.
- 8- We should reduce the rate of environmental pollution by planting more trees and rationalizing the use of energy.

B) Translate into English:

- 1- الخيال العلمي عادة هو محاولة جادة للكتابة عن شكل الحياة في المستقبل أو في عالم آخر.
- 2- تبذل الحكومة أقصى جهدها لإيجاد فرص عمل للشباب وبناء مساكن لهم.
- 3- يجب أن يلتحق الطالب بالكلية التي تناسب مواهبه و قدراته.
- 4- يجب أن تكون لك المؤهلات العلمية والصفات الشخصية اللازمة للتقدم لهذه الوظيفة.
- 5- معظم الصحف والمجلات يتم صناعتها من الورق المعاد تدويره.
- 6- هل تعتقد أن الكتاب الإلكتروني سيحل يوماً ما محل الكتاب التقليدي؟
- 7- تنشئ الحكومة مشروعات عملاقة لتوفير فرص عمل للشباب و زيادة الدخل القومي.
- 8- تعتمد اى امة فى تقدمها على الشباب والخدمات التي يقدمونها لبلادهم.
- 9- يفضل بعض الناس استثمار أموالهم في المشروعات المربحة.
- 10- التقدم في تكنولوجيا الكمبيوتر أحدث ثورة في عالم الاتصالات.
- 11- أصبح العالم قرية صغيرة بفضل العولمة.

Unit 4 : Women in History

Key Vocabulary

argue for	يجادل لصالح / يدافع عن	impressive	مؤثر / مبهر / مثير للاعجاب
degree	درجة / شهادة علمية	flight	رحلة طيران
inspector	مفتش	licence	رخصة
personal	شخصي	nursing	التمريض
positive	ايجابي	be in charge of	مسئول عن
solo	منفرد / عمل منفرد	suitable	مناسب
role	دور	employ	يوظف / يشغل
appreciate	يقدر	career	الحياة المهنية
award	يمنح / مكافأة	director	مدير / مخرج
respected	محترم مهنيا / متميز	government	حكومة

Vocabulary

a solo flight	رحلة طيران منفردة	license	يرخص / يمنح رخصة
fly solo	يسافر وحده	social	اجتماعي
flying school	مدرسة طيران	society	المجتمع
flying = aviation	الطيران	effect	تأثير
fly a plane	يقود طائرة	effective	فعال / مؤثر
personality	شخصية	effectiveness	فاعلية
personally	شخصيا	qualifications	مؤهلات
positively	ايجابيا / بصورة ايجابية	qualities	صفات
rule	يحكم / قاعدة	physical fitness	اللياقة البدنية
standard	مستوي	determination	تصميم / عزيمة
bravery	شجاعة	assist = help	يساعد
admire / admiration	يُعجب بـ / إعجاب	a research assistant	باحث مساعد
inspect (or)	يفتش (مفتش)	wounded soldiers	جنود جرحي
inspection	تفتيش	nurse	ممرضة / ترعى شخص / تمريض
like this	مثل هذا / هكذا	nursing staff	هيئة التمريض
obey	يطيع	School of Nursing	مدرسة للتمريض
social worker	أخصائي اجتماعي	found –ed –ed	يؤسس
women's rights	حقوق المرأة	foundation	مؤسسة
Arab World	العالم العربي	religious matters	مسائل دينية
alternative	بديل	impress	يؤثر في
appreciative	مقدر للشيء	impressed	متأثر
appreciatively	بامتنان	impressively	بشكل مؤثر
appreciation	تقدير	impression	انطباع

Prepositions and Expressions

on his own = alone	بمفرده	take on	يتحمل مسئولية / يوظف / يُشغل
be associated with	مرتبط بـ	take up	يشغل حيز/ وقت - يعمل بوظيفة
care for	يعتنى بـ (شخص)	To sum up,	باختصار
care about	يهتم بـ (شئ / موضوع)	be determined to	مصمم علي
popular with	مشهور لدي / محبوب من	have access to	يكون على اتصال بـ
make flights	يقوم برحلات جوية	suitable for	مناسب لـ / صالح لـ
mark an event	يميز حدث	successful at	ناجح في
do all jobs	يقوم بكل المهام	give an example of	يعطي مثالاً لـ
look after = take care of	يعتنى بـ	have an effect on	له تأثير على
have a degree in	لديه درجة علمية في	do with his life	له علاقة بحياته
in detail	بالتفصيل	Be licensed to	مُرخص له أن
as a result,	ونتيجة لذلك	introduce new ideas	يقدم افكار جديدة
appeal to	يروق لـ - يُعجب	hold / have a licence	يحمل رخصة
be awarded / won / got	يتم منحه ...	decide on + (اسم)	يقرر / يختار
grow up	يكبر / ينشأ	the first of this kind	الاولى من نوعها
play a positive role in	يلعب دور ايجابي في	was born into a wealthy family	وُلد في أسرة ثرية

Antonyms

personal	شخصي	public	عام
argue for	يجادل لصالح	argue against	يجادل / يقف ضد
brave	شجاع	cowardly	جبان
well-known	مشهور / معروف	unknown	غير معروف
constructive	بناء	destructive	هدام

Derivatives

Verb		Noun		Adjective	
argue	يجادل	argument	جدل / خلاف	arguable	مثير للجدل
encourage (to)	يشجع	encouragement	تشجيع	argumentative	مجادل
suit	يناسب	suitability	ملائمة	encouraging	مُشجِع
govern	يحكم	governor	حاكم / محافظ	suitable	ملائم / مناسب
brave	يواجه / يتجرأ على	bravery	الشجاعة	governmental	حكومي
practise	يمارس	practice	ممارسة	brave	شجاع
qualify	يتأهل	qualification	مؤهل	practical	عملي
employ	يوظف	employment	توظيف	qualified	مؤهل
				employable	مناسب للعمل

Words go together

break a record	يحطم رقم قياسي	self-sufficiency	الاكتفاء الذاتي
miss a record	يضيع رقم قياسي	obey the rules	يُطيع القواعد
a positive attitude	موقف ايجابي	nursing home	دار المسنين
a constructive dialogue	حوار بناء	a vital role	دور حيوي أو أساسي
strength of character	قوة الشخصية	under a pen name	بأسم مستعار

Read the following carefully

Listening

Narrator: Dr Aisha Abd El-Rahman, who is known as Bint El-Shatei, is one of the most famous people in Egyptian and Arab culture. As well as writing books on society and culture, she also wrote poems and for fifty years wrote for the newspaper: Al Ahram. During her life, she helped to improve women's position in Egyptian society.

Dr Aisha was born in 1913. Her father was an important man and Dr Aisha used to go with him to meetings, at which she learned to read and write. At a time when many girls didn't go to school. Aisha's mother encouraged her daughter to get a good education and, as a result, Aisha started school at the age of five.

Dr Aisha was successful at school and went to Cairo University, where she studied Arabic language and literature. She was awarded her degree in 1939 and then joined the university staff as a research assistant. In 1942, she was employed as a government inspector for the teaching of Arabic literature.

Using the name Bint El Shatei, Dr Aisha wrote many books and articles in which she argued for a more positive role for women in the modern world.

Dr Aisha was a respected teacher and taught at many universities across the Arab world. With her husband, Professor Amin El-Kholy, Dr Aisha spent holidays visiting European museums, universities and libraries.

Dr Aisha died in 1998 at the age of eighty five. Her work, which had taken up much of her personal life, is still appreciated today.

Reading

Florence Nightingale

Florence Nightingale was born in 1820 into a wealthy family in Italy, but grew up and went to school in England. When she was 17, she decided that she wanted to be a nurse, although her family did not think that this was a suitable job for their young daughter. However, Florence's work in a London hospital was so effective that the British government asked her to be in charge of the nursing of wounded soldiers abroad. After working in Europe, she returned to England and opened the Nightingale School of Nursing in London, the first school of this kind.

Lotfia El Nadi

In 1932, Lotfia El Nadi was **the first** and only woman **to join** a new school for pilots **at Almaza airport**. Her parents didn't want her to be a pilot, so El Nadi **worked as** a secretary at the airport to pay for her lessons. When she was only 26, El Nadi became the first woman in Egypt to have a pilot's **licence**. In December 1933, she became famous when she flew **solo** in an international race, which went from Cairo to Alexandria. *She was only the second woman ever to fly like this.* El Nadi, who had to **stop flying** after an accident, died in 2002 **aged 94**. However, her achievements encouraged other women to have a **career** in flying. For example, in 1944, Linda Masoud became the first woman teacher at the flying school and Aziza Moharam later became a **director** there.

Definitions

argue for	to clearly explain why I think something is true or should be done
award	to officially give someone a prize or money
appreciate	to understand and enjoy the good qualities or value of something
government	a group of people who govern a country or state
respected	admired by many people because of achievements, skills, etc
role	the position that someone has in a situation or activity
positive	having a good or useful effect
in charge	to be the person who controls or is responsible for someone/thing
suitable	right or acceptable for a particular purpose or situation
licence	an official document that gives you permission to do something
nursing	the job of looking after people who are ill, injured or very poor
solo	done alone, without anyone else helping you
career	a job or profession that you have been trained for and intend to do for a long time
impressive	making you admire something
director	someone who controls or manages a company, organization or activity

Language Notes

Get : Have	You can get very good meals in this restaurant.
Get : Receive	I got a very important message on my mobile last night.
Get : Buy	You can get a good TV from this shop.
Get : Reach	How are you getting home today?
Get : Become	It is getting very hot these days.
Get : Obtain	I got a good mark for my essay.
Get : Persuade	I got him to give me a pay rise.

Get : Understand Do you **get** what I'm saying.

Get : Catch He **got** a flu and had to stay at home.

respected يحظى بالاحترام و الاعجاب بسبب عمله أو انجازاته (نوع الوظيفة)

respectable محترم (يتصرف بطريقة مقبولة اجتماعيا و أخلاقيا) (العائلة والافراد والمهن)

respectful يظهر الاحترام لـ / تجاه / مع (to / towards / with)

Ex: Dr Magdi Yacoub is a **respected** heart surgeon.

She is a **respectable** young woman from a good family

We should be **respectful** towards elderly people.

special خاص (يتميز عن غيره) | **private** خاص (يملكه أو يستخدمه شخص أو مجموعة)

Ex: **special** occasion مناسبة / train / clothes / care رعاية / friend

private car / school / letter / life / hospital / visit

in time = not late, early enough في الوقت المناسب

on time = punctual في الوقت المحدد في الميعاد

Ex: I got home just **in time** - it's starting to rain.

Despite the bad weather, our plane left **on time**.

on his own وحيد / بمفرده | **of his own** ملكه

Ex: He's been living **on his own** for four years now.

He had a car **of his own**.

staff هيئة العاملين | **crew** طاقم (سفينة / طائرة)

Ex: When the ship sank, the **crew** were saved by a passing ship.

She joined the university **staff** as a research assistant.

wounded جريح / مجروح (باستخدام سلاح في حرب مثلا)

injured مصاب / مجروح (في حادث)

Ex: Two officers were badly **wounded**.

One passenger was killed and four were **injured**.

next لا تستخدم the قبل كلمة next إذا جاءت بعدها كلمات تدل علي الزمن

next تستخدم the قبل كلمة next إذا جاءت بعدها اسم

Ex: She's travelling to London **next Monday**.

Read **the next two chapters** before Friday.

at the age of في عمر | **in the age of** في عصر

Ex: She died **at the age of** 85.

In the age of Mohamed Ali, a lot of schools were built.

persuade + مصدر + to + مفعول بأن يقنع

Ex: He **persuaded me to join** a sports club.

هناك ظروف معينة يمكن أن يبدأ بها الكلام و يأتي بعدها جملة كاملة مثل
personally / بلا شك **undoubtedly** / من المثير للاهتمام **Interestingly**

Ex: **Personally**, I believe that everyone should study science at school.

إذا جاء فعل بعد الاعداد الترتيبية مثل first – second – last نضعه : to + inf.

Ex: Amani was **the last to know** about her father's accident.

learn – teach + (to + inf) أو (how to + inf)	■ يتعلم - يعلم
know – show + (how to + inf)	■ يعرف - يوضح

Ex: She **learns to cook / how to cook**. She **knows how to cook**.

terrible	فظيع / سي جدا	terrific	رائع
affect	يؤثر على	effect	تأثير
staff	هيئة عاملين	stuff	يحنط / يحشو
nursing	التمريض	nursery	حضانة
find found	يجد	found founded	يؤسس
personal	شخصي	personnel	شئون العاملين
position	مكانة / موضع	rank	رتبة (ترقية لأعلى)
join	يلتحق بـ / يصبح جزءا من	enter	يدخل (الى مكان / مسابقة)
licence	رخصة لمزاولة شئ دائم	permit	تصريح لعمل شئ مؤقت

Language Functions

Expressing enthusiasm

Hey, that's terrific.	I can't wait (to start).
That's really great news, isn't it?	I'm really enthusiastic about it.
I can't tell you how happy that makes me.	I'm really looking forward to it.
That's fantastic!	Wow! That's brilliant!
I'm over the moon. (I am very happy)	What a great idea!

Choose the correct answer:

- 1- My older brother has been (**won – awarded – rewarded – got**) a maths prize from Cairo University.
- 2- Exercise can have a (**positive – negative – position – positively**) effect on your health and fitness.
- 3- Nurses have an important (**goal – rule – role – rank**) in looking after patients in a hospital.
- 4- My parents always (**disappoint – depress – appreciate – discourage**) it when I work hard at school.
- 5- This new hospital was built with money from the (**government – govern – government – environment**).
- 6- Mrs Nagwa is a (**respectful – respectable – respect – respected**) teacher at the school. Her students usually do very well in their exams.

- 7- The people I help at the charity are always very (**appreciate – appreciative – appreciation – appreciatively**) of my work.
- 8- Young children are usually very (**respectful – respectable – respect – respected**) towards their teachers.
- 9- They are well behaved children who come from a (**respectful – respectable – respect – respected**) family.
- 10- How long has the King (**government – governed – governorate – govern**) that country?
- 11- It was a great football match. Both teams played very (**negatively – positively – badly – passively**).
- 12- The (**forward – backward – award – coward**) for winning the swimming race is a gold cup.
- 13- The whole class clapped (**appreciate – appreciative – appreciation – appreciatively**) at the end of the interesting speech. They had learned a lot.
- 14- A 14-year old Japanese boy has become the youngest person to complete a (**lonely – solo – alone – single**) voyage across the Pacific Ocean.
- 15- Before you can fly alone, you need to have a pilot's (**qualification – degree – agreement – licence**).
- 16- My father spent all his (**career – job – position – carer**) working in a bank.
- 17- Some films are not (**right – kind – sure – suitable**) for young children.
- 18- That film was made by a famous (**direction – director – dirhea – direct**)
- 19- My uncle is (**of charge – in charge – with control – by charge**) of the Science Department in a secondary school.
- 20- The (**office – nursing – nurse – teaching**) staff at the hospital work very hard to look after the patients.
- 21- Your grades are (**impress – impressive – impression – impressed**), Jena.
- 22- Florence Nightingale was a nurse who (**produced – directed – stretched – introduced**) new ways of nursing.
- 23- Queen Victoria (**stayed – took – ruled – involved**) Britain for 63 years.
- 24- My older brother has a (**decree – degree – licence – flight**) in Maths from Cairo University.
- 25- My parents have always (**stopped – prevented – discouraged – encouraged**) me to work hard at school.
- 26- I'd prefer not to talk about that. It's something very (**personal – personnel – in person – personally**).
- 27- I found university work very difficult, but my friends were always very (**negative – discouraging – encouraging – passive**).
- 28- Some students need much more (**encouragement – discouragement – disappointment – depression**) than others at school.
- 29- (**Person – Personal – Personally – Personality**), I believe that everyone should study science at school.

- 30- She would be a good nurse. She has a very kind (**person – personal – personally – personality**).
- 31- The (**flying – flight – swimming – walking**) from London to Cairo takes about 4 hours.
- 32- Doctors are always trying to find (**effective – negative – useless – affective**) treatments for diseases.
- 33- A / An (**collector – inspector – conductor – investigator**) checks that something is of a good enough standard and that rules are being obeyed.
- 34- A (**licence – degree – bill – receipt**) is a document that gives permission to do something.
- 35- (**Accounting – Teaching – Nursing – Training**) is a job of looking after people who are ill.
- 36- (**Polio – Folio – Polo – Solo**) means done on your own, without help from another person.
- 37- A (**cruise – tour – voyage – flight**) is a journey by air.
- 38- The radiation leak has had a disastrous (**affect – affection – effect – effective**) on the environment.
- 39- There's no doubt about Sara's (**suit – suitable – suitability – suiting**) for the job. She is very efficient.
- 40- There's no doubt that Sara's (**suit – suitable – suitability – suiting**) for the job. She is very efficient.
- 41- A (**duty – responsibility – role – charge**) is the position that someone has in a situation or activity
- 42- Her great work is still (**appeared – applied – appreciated – appointed**) today.
- 43- She (**spent – left – went – did**) her life doing the things she was interested in.
- 44- (**Public – General – Universal – Personal**) means involving someone's private life, their feelings, health and relationships
- 45- As well as writing books on (**social – sociable – society – variety**) and culture, she also wrote poems.
- 46- Aisha Abd El-Rahman helped to improve women's (**site – disposition – post – position**) in society.
- 47- He joined the university (**stiff – staff – stuff – crew**) as a research assistant.
- 48- She was employed as a government (**actor – ambassador – inspector – ancestor**) for the teaching of Arabic literature.
- 49- Dr Aisha Abd El-Rahman is better known to some people (**for – by – as – of**) Bint El-Shatei.
- 50- On your first day in a new job, you should make a good (**expression – impression – depression – tradition**).
- 51- Her work took (**up – off – down – to**) much of her personal life.

- 52- Dr Aisha wrote articles in which she argued powerfully (**for – against – out – with**) women's rights.
- 53- Dalia was very successful (**in – into – about – at**) school and entered Assiut University.
- 54- Dr Aisha wrote many books and articles (**on – of – for – in**) cultural and religious matters.
- 55- Dr Aisha wrote many books and articles on matters related to (**cultured – culturally – cultural – culture**) and religion.
- 56- Yusuf's ability to speak French is very (**impression – impressed – impressive – impressing**). Many companies will want to hire him.
- 57- The company denies that it has (**praised – placed – rose – practiced**) discrimination against any of its employees.
- 58- Several companies have been (**prevented – collapsed – licensed – banned**) to sell these products.
- 59- He didn't decide to work as a doctor until he had grown (**out – down – of – up**).
- 60- The ambulance took the (**wounded – wound – winding – wounding**) to the nearest hospital.
- 61- Kasim Ameen argued strongly for (**proving – intruding – improving – inducing**) women's position.
- 62- She taught at many universities across the Arab (**village – town – city – world**).
- 63- Marrie Curie was the first and the (**alone – only – lonely – lone**) woman to travel to space.
- 64- He decided to (**arrange – jump – join – enter**) a driving school to learn how to drive.
- 65- It is almost impossible for a manager to work without a (**secretary – pilot – scientist – director**).
- 66- Lotfia was the second woman to fly (**as – such as – like – similar**) this.
- 67- One of this player's (**ambitious – achievements – encouragement – career**) is to be the captain when he is still very young.
- 68- The highlight of the (**job – work – occupation – career**) of any athlete is to take part in the Olympics.
- 69- The (**manager – produce – director – secretary**) of the film didn't like the previous shot so he decided to retake it.
- 70- The weather is (**coming – getting – going – having**) colder and colder. Let's go home.
- 71- Several companies have been (**ruled – collapsed – licensed – broken**) to sell these products.
- 72- A good director is the one who (**neglects – degrades – communicates – appreciates**) his employees' efforts.

Language Focus

عبارات الوصل Relative Clauses

يستخدم ضمير الوصل لربط جملتين و يحل محل اسم أو ضمير مكرر في الجملة الثانية

🔗 **Who / that:** تحل محل فاعل عاقل و يأتي بعدها فاعل أو فعل

..... فاعل / فعل + who / that + اسم موصول عاقل

The woman **who / that** was injured in the accident is in hospital.

🔗 **Whom / who / that:** تحل محل مفعول عاقل و يأتي بعدها فاعل فقط

..... فاعل + who / whom / that + اسم موصول عاقل

The boy **whom / who / that** I wanted to talk to was not at home.

🔗 **Which/ that:** تحل محل فاعل غير عاقل أو مفعول غير عاقل و يأتي بعدها فاعل أو فعل

..... فاعل / فعل + which / that + اسم موصول غير عاقل

Hala works for a company **which / that** manufactures computers.

The shoes **which / that** Nadia bought don't fit very well.

🔗 **Whose:** تستخدم للملكية وتحل محل اسم 's أو صفات الملكية و يأتي بعدها أسم مملوك

..... أسم مملوك + whose + اسم موصول عاقل / غير عاقل

We met a lady **whose** daughter has just got married.

🔗 **Where = which** حرف جر / حرف جر

تحل محل ظرف مكان (جار و مجرور / there)

..... جملة بها ما حدث في المكان و بدون حرف جر + where + مكان

This is the school **which** I learned in. = This is the school **where** I learned.

🔗 **When = which** حرف جر / حرف جر

تحل محل ظرف زمان (جار و مجرور / there)

..... جملة بها ما حدث في الزمان و بدون حرف جر + when + زمان

June is the month **when** I go on holiday. = **in which** I go on holiday.

🔗 ملاحظات:

1- تحل that محل who / whom / which و لكن لا تستخدم مع أسم العلم أو بعد حروف

الجر أو بعد ال (,) Comma :

- Mr Wong, **who** has just arrived, is the chief buyer for a Chinese company.
- The company, **which** is in Beijing, employs 1,000 people.

2- لاحظ استخدام that فقط بعد صفات التفضيل للإشارة إلى غير العاقل و استخدام that أو

who للإشارة إلى العاقل:

- This is **the most interesting story that** I have ever read.
- He was **the best player that / who** ever played football.

3- عادة تستخدم that بعد :all / much / little / the thing / any / some / the only:

- That was **all that** he had said. = That was **what** he had said.

- 4- تستخدم what بدلا من the thing that/which وتعد ضمير وصل بدون اسم موصول:
- We'd better decide **what** we need to buy.
- 5- يمكن حذف ضمير الوصل دون تغيير في الجملة طالما بعده فاعل مع حذف ضمير المفعول:
- I need to talk to someone (**who / whom / that / no pronoun**) I can trust.
- 6- يمكن حذف ضمير الوصل في الحالات الآتية (مع ضرورة حذف verb to be أيضا):
- إذا كان بعده مبنى للمجهول :
 - The man **who was injured / injured** in the accident was taken to hospital.
 - إذا كان بعده مبنى للمعلوم و نضيف للفعل **v.+ ing** :
 - Students **who arrived / arriving** late missed the start of the experiment.
 - إذا كان بعده جار ومجرور أو اسم أو اسم موصوف أو صفة :
 - The boy (**who's**) in the corner is asleep. - I want to eat something (**that's**) spicy.
- 7- لاحظ حرف الجر لا يسبق who / that ولكن يسبق whom / which :
- This is Ali **who / whom** I told you **about**.
- The train **by which** I came arrived late. - The train **that** I came **by** arrived late.
- 8- لاحظ ان which تستخدم مع المكان أو الزمان في الحالات الآتية :
- 1- إذا كان هناك حرف جر قبل النقط. 2- إذا كان هناك فعل بعد النقط مباشرة.
 - 3- إذا كان هناك حرف جر مكان أو زمان في الجملة التي بعد النقط.
 - 4- إذا وصفت الجملة الثانية المكان أو ما يحدث له.
- 9- لاحظ استخدام which لتشير إلى معنى جملة كاملة قبلها :
- **He got very bad marks in the test, which** made his parents very sad.
- **One of the boys kept laughing, which** annoyed the teacher very much.
- 10- ولكن كيف نختار حرف الجر قبل which : نفترض ان الاسم الموصول في آخر الجملة الثانية و نحدد حرف الجر الذي يحتاجه أو حسب فعل الجملة الثانية أو حسب المعنى :
- I finished a novel **in which** the main character is an 80-year-old man.
- They said something very cruel, **for which** I think they should apologize.
- She asked me where I had been, **to which** I replied "It's a secret."
- He says he's busy, **by which** he really means he doesn't want to go out with us.
- 11- يمكن أن تسبق (whom – which) بكلمة دالة على الكمية متبوعة بـ of :
- I saw three girls but none of whom I admired .
- I bought many books but a few of which are interesting.
- 12- لاحظ أن هناك نوعان من جملة الوصل :
- 1- نوع يعطي معلومة أساسية عن الشيء أو الشخص أو المكان الذي نتحدث عنه، ونستخدم في هذا النوع **who / which / whom** ولا نستخدم **comma** قبل أو بعد عبارة الوصل، ويمكن استخدام **that** بدلا من ضمائر الوصل :
 - The woman **who / that** stole the ring was soon arrested.
 - The noise **which / that** he made woke everybody up.
 - 2- نوع لا يقدم معلومة هامة عن الشيء أو الشخص أو المكان الذي نتحدث عنه ولا بد من استخدام **comma** قبل وبعد عبارة الوصل و لا تستخدم **that** في هذا النوع :
 - Sara's mother, **who** works for the national bank, always comes home late.
 - The compuer, **which** Hani bought yesterday, is expensive.

Choose the correct answer:

- 1- Yesterday, I played a long game of tennis with my brother, (**when – then – which – for which**) made me very tired.
- 2- They said something very cruel, (**at which – by which – in which – for which**) I think they should apologize.
- 3- The person (**which – where – when – who**) does most of the cooking in our family is my mother.
- 4- 1837 was the year (**where – which – when – who**) Victoria became queen.
- 5- Alexandria, (**where – who – which – when**) my mother was born, is in northern Egypt.
- 6- Cleopatra, (**who – whom – whose – that**) was very beautiful, was the last pharaoh of Egypt.
- 7- I've just read a newspaper article in (**which – whom – who – that**) the life of a famous woman is described in detail.
- 8- Lord of the Flies is a story (**which – whom – in which – whose**) a group of school boys are shipwrecked on an island.
- 9- She asked me where I had been, (**at which – at whom – to which – to that**) I replied, "It's a secret".
- 10- Tomorrow, I'm going to a meeting (**which – at which – whose – at when**) we are going to discuss women's role in society.
- 11- The nurse, (**whose – whom – who – that**) must look after young children, has worked at the hospital for ten years.
- 12- My sister went to London University, (**which – where – when – that**) she studied history.
- 13- I spoke to the worker (**was cleaning – who cleaning – cleaning – cleaned**) my office.
- 14- Did you like the room (**that we stayed – that we stayed in it – we stayed - we stayed in**)?
- 15- Wael did something wrong, (**for which – by which – at which – to which**) he apologized.
- 16- I always like to buy cotton (**that from – is from – which from – from**) Egypt.
- 17- Abdel-Tawab Youssef (**who – whom – whose – that**) books have been translated into many languages is a famous children's writer.
- 18- Adel is my friend (**who – whom – whose – that**) brother won the poetry competition.
- 19- Have you seen (**which – what – whose – that**) I bought from London?
- 20- Alexandria, (**where – which – whose – that**) is Egypt's second biggest city, is a wonderful place for a holiday.
- 21- Dr Aisha wrote many articles (**in which – by which – at which – which**) she discussed women's rights in.

- 22- Raneem El Welily won a competition in 2015 (**when – which – at which – where**) made her the number one women's squash player in the world.
- 23- Dr Aisha Abd El-Rahman, (**that – who – whose – which**) work took up a lot of her personal life, is one of the most famous people in the Arab culture.
- 24- Dr Aisha used to go with her father to meetings (**at which – of which – to which – for which**) she learned to read and write.
- 25- She went to Cairo University, (**when – which – what – where**) she studied Arabic language and literature.
- 26- Her work, (**that – which – what – whose**) took up much of her personal life, is still appreciated today.
- 27- My penfriend, (**who – that – where – when**) lives in Sweden, is studying biology at university.
- 28- Aisha, (**which – whom – whose – that**) father is a well-known doctor, is my best friend at school.
- 29- My brother (**whom – whose – where – that**) stay is in New York is going to visit us soon.
- 30- Fruit (**when – that – where – what**) ripens on the tree tastes best.
- 31- Our flat, (**which – that – whose – where**) is on the fifth floor, overlooks the Nile.
- 32- Queen Victoria's husband, Prince Albert, died in 1861, (**after which – with which – by which – from which**) Victoria always wore black clothes.
- 33- I'm hoping to study science at university, (**which – that – after which – of which**) I'd like to work as a research assistant.
- 34- The city (**that – in which – when – what**) I was born is in the south of Egypt.
- 35- This is the bank (**which – who – where – when**) was robbed yesterday.
- 36- The man (**who – which – whom – whose**) robbed the bank had two pistols.
- 37- He wore a mask (**who – which – where – whose**) made him look like Mickey Mouse.
- 38- He came with a friend (**who – which – whom – whose**) waited outside.
- 39- The woman (**whom – which – that – whose**) gave him the money was young.
- 40- The bag (**who – which – where – whose**) contained the money was yellow.
- 41- The people (**whom – which – that – whose**) were in the bank were frightened.
- 42- The man (**who – which – that – whose**) mobile was ringing ran out quickly.
- 43- The car (**who – where – which – when**) the robbers escaped in was orange.
- 44- He didn't wait at the traffic lights (**who – where – which – when**) were red.
- 45- A police officer (**who – which – that – whose**) car was parked at the next corner stopped and arrested them.

- 46- Eighteen is the age (**in which – with which – at which – by which**) you can vote in elections.
- 47- Can you see the girl over there by the window? Isn't she the one (**which – whom – that – what**) won the race last week?
- 48- The man (**who – whom – whose – from whom**) the car was stolen, called the police.
- 49- Slippers are (**where – when – which – what**) people wear in the house.
- 50- I don't like people (**whom – whose – when – who**) talk all the time.
- 51- Have you ever been back to the town (**where – that – when – which**) you were born in?
- 52- A vegetarian is someone (**which – who – what – whose**) doesn't eat meat.
- 53- My colleague, (**that – who – whom – whose**) work is extremely fantastic, isn't very popular.
- 54- The camera has a cover (**which made – made – making – is made**) of leather.
- 55- Do you know (**whom – who – whose – who's**) that man standing near Tom is?
- 56- I managed to get all the books (**who – whose – whom – that**) you asked.
- 57- Her work, (**which – who – what – whose**) was not appreciated when she was young, made her famous when she was older.
- 58- Those are the things (**whom – who – that – whose**) are to be put on the shelf.
- 59- Sami went to the Sorbonne, (**where – when – which – what**) he studied political science.
- 60- He says he's busy, (**which – for which – by which – by what**) he really means he doesn't want to go out this evening.
- 61- Woman's Day, (**where – when – which – what**) marks an important event in 1919, is on March 16.
- 62- He showed me round the town, (**where – when – which – what**) was very kind of him.
- 63- Ahmed Zewail is the scientist (**whose – who – that – what**) discoveries benefit the world.
- 64- We called at a café (**where – when – which – what**) is said to be the oldest in England.
- 65- The man about (**whom – when – who – that**) you told me yesterday is here to see you.
- 66- That's the knife (**by which – at which – which – with which**) he was killed.
- 67- I'm sure I'll enjoy (**whatever – whichever – whoever – whenever**) you cook.
- 68- Alison Jones and her husband David, (**when – where – who – whose**) live in London, are celebrating their golden wedding anniversary.

- 69- The tourists (**which – who – whose – whom**) stay had ended left to their countries.
- 70- One of my neighbours throws rubbish in the street, (**that – which – where – when**) annoys me intensely.
- 71- Solar energy is an idea (**which – whose – that – where**) time has come.
- 72- I returned to Boston, (**when – which – where – whom**) my parents lived.
- 73- Bradford, (**where – when – that – which**) is my hometown, has a lot of splendid restaurants.
- 74- The woman (**when – who – where – which**) murdered her husband was sentenced to death.
- 75- The treatment will continue until the patient reaches the point (**where – when – that – which**) he can walk correctly and safely.

Exercises on Unit 4

2- Read the following passage, then answer the questions:

In my project, I have to write about three powerful women in history. It is not easy to decide who to write about because there have been many important women! However, I'm going to start with Hatshepsut, who was ruler of ancient Egypt for longer than any other woman. She was the daughter of Thutmose I. During her time as Pharaoh, she helped to build many important buildings, started trade with new countries and won some important wars. She died in around 1458 BCE. Archaeologists did not know very much about Hatshepsut until the 19th century. **This** might be because pictures and sculptures of the Pharaoh show her as a man. Next, I want to write about Emperor Wu Zetian. Wu Zetian had a good education. She was ruler of China in the first century CE and helped to improve Chinese people's education. Wu Zetian, who died at the age of 80, also helped to improve China's agriculture. In that way, there was enough food for everyone to eat. She is impressive because she is the only woman in China to have ruled as an Emperor. Finally, I will include Britain's Queen Victoria who ruled from 1837 to 1901. She was a respected Queen for 63 years at a time when Britain was the most powerful country in the world. She was also a wife and the mother of nine children. The Queen insisted on a law to stop people using slaves in 1838. She was also responsible for reducing the number of hours that people had to work in factories.

A) Choose the correct answer:

- 1- Which of the following did Hatshepsut not do to help ancient Egypt?
- | | |
|----------------------------------|-------------------------------------|
| a) sell goods to other countries | b) win battles with other countries |
| c) help to build | d) open new schools |
- 2- How do you think that Wu Zetian's education helped her to be a good ruler?
- | | |
|--|------------------------|
| a) She learned how to help other people. | b) She knew about art. |
| c) She could trade with other countries. | d) She could win wars. |

- 3- How did Wu Zetian make sure that people had enough to eat? She
- a) helped people's education.
 - b) improved farms.
 - c) opened shops.
 - d) opened factories
- 4- What is the main idea of the text?
- a) Women should be rulers.
 - b) Women can do great things.
 - c) Women were usually successful in the past.
 - d) You can trust women.
- 5- What does the underlined word this refer to?
- a) Why archaeologists did not know very much about Hatshepsut.
 - b) Why Hatshepsut died.
 - c) Why people thought Hatshepsut was a man.
 - d) Why people painted pictures of Hatshepsut.
- 6- What do you think the word Emperor refers to?
- a) someone's name
 - b) a part of China
 - c) the name of a book
 - d) the title of a ruler

B) Answer the following questions:

- 7- Do you agree with the choice of these three women? Why / Why not?
- 8- Which three women does the writer choose to write about?
- 9- What were 3 of Hatshepsut's accomplishments?
- 10- Give a suitable title for this passage.

4- Finish the following dialogue :

Fady is with Amir and his friends and wants to buy a ticket at a railway station.

Fady : I haven't used the machine in the railway station before. Does anyone know how to buy a ticket?

Amir : 1)..... You touch the screen to buy a ticket.

Fady : OK, I see now. I tell it where I want to go. Where do I put the money?

Amir : 2).....

Fady : No, the money won't go in there.

Amir : Maybe the machine is broken. 3).....

Fady : From the ticket office? Perhaps you're right.

Amir : I'm giving a talk about machines tomorrow.

Fady : 4).....

Amir : Good idea. I'll start the talk by telling them about what happened to you.

Fady : How will you finish?

Amir : 5).....

Fady : You're right ! Machines do not always work I

Amir : I wish you good luck.

Fady : 6).....

5- Write a paragraph of about (120) words on ONE (1) of the following:

- a) The job that you would like to do, and why. b) Modern inventions.

6- A) Translate into Arabic:

- 1- Egyptian women have always played a vital role in development projects.
- 2- It is important for people to separate their work from their home life.
- 3- Dr. Magdi Yacoub is considered one of the best six surgeons in the world and the 2nd doctor that performed heart transplant after Christian Bernard.

B) Translate into English:

- 1- نفخر بأن التعليم هو المشروع القومي الأول في مصر.
- 2- الأمية مشكلة اجتماعية خطيرة ولا بد أن نبذل المزيد من الجهود لحلها.
- 3- تتعرض كثير من الحيوانات والطيور النادرة للانقراض بسبب سوء استغلال الانسان للبيئة.
- 4- عليك أن تظهر الاحترام والتقدير لوالديك ومعلميك بشكل دائم.
- 5- تذكر دائما ان العمل الجاد هو السبيل الى حياة ناجحة فى كل المجالات.

The job you would like to do when you leave school

It is known that any person should have a certain goal in life. If a person has a goal, he should exert great efforts to achieve this goal. My goal for the future is to become a doctor. I would like to do this job to serve my country, help the poor people in my village and earn enough money. The job of the doctor needs some qualities. A successful doctor should be honest, helpful, brave, patient, faithful and many other good qualities. If I want to become a doctor, I should study hard to join the faculty of medicine. Then, I should work so hard to gain experience and start my way to the top. To sum up, I hope my plans for the future will pay off.

Modern inventions

As a matter of fact "Modern Inventions" is a very important topic to talk about as they play a vital role in everyone's life. Modern inventions have made our life more comfortable than before. Work at factories is done accurately and quickly with the help of modern machines. Thanks to modern means of communication, such as; the internet, satellites, telephones and mobile phones, the world has become a small village. We also can travel to any place by planes in a very short time. Spaceships and rockets enable us to explore the unknown places. The T.V is one of the inventions that gives us the opportunity to watch sports, educational programmes, health programmes, events and entertainment. In fact, Modern inventions help man to extend the power of his mind so I can't imagine the world without them.

Unit 5: Emily Dickinson : If I can stop

Key Vocabulary

faint	يصاب بإغماء	asleep	نائم
in vain	دون جدوى / بدون فائدة	ashore	علي الشاطيء
ease	يبسر / يخفف	awake	مستيقظ
aching	مؤلم / ألم	ahead	إلى الإمام
robin	طائر أبو الحناء	along	بطول
publisher	ناشر	alive x dead	حي x ميت
moving	محرك للمشاعر	challenge	يتحدى / تحدى
angle worm	دودة الارض (طعم)	challenging	شاق / مجهد

Vocabulary

poetry / poem	شعر / قصيدة	sadness	حزن
modern poet	شاعر معاصر	lovely	جميل
verse	بيت شعر	fine	يغرم / غرامة
rhyme / rhythm	قافية / إيقاع	headache	صداع
partly rhyme	تصنع قافية جزئيا	traditionally	بصورة تقليدية
vain	تافه - مختال	selflessly	بإثار
emotion / emotional	عاطفة / عاطفي	earthquake	زلزال
smile	ابتسامة / يبتسم	law / lawful	قانون / قانوني
review	مقالة نقدية	touching	مؤثر
reviewer	ناقد	staff	هيئة عاملين
rescuer	منقذ	blond (e)	أشقر
crash	تحطم	comment	تعليق
follow	يتبع	morals	أخلاق / دروس اخلاقية
support	تأييد	successful	ناجح
expression	تعبير	somewhere	مكان ما
half / halves	نصف / أنصاف	phrase	عبارة
cool pain	يهدئ الألم	summarise	يلخص
a present	هدية	lighten	يخفف
blond	أشقر اللون	burden	حمل / عبء
distribute	يوزع	castle	قلعة
pain / painful	الم / مؤلم	a card	كارت
nest	عش	partner	زميل / شريك
waste	يضيع	bite – bit – bitten	يقضم
title	عنوان / لقب	fellow	شخص / رفيق
unusual adult	بالغ غير عادي	promote	يترقى

punctuation	الترقيم / الانضباط	member	فرد / عضو
passengers	ركاب	individual	فرد / فردي
skill / skillful	مهارة / ماهر	emphasize	يؤكد
bright scene	مشهد رائع	ease ache	يخفف الألم

Prepositions & Expressions

in vain	دون جدوى – بلا فائدة	go ahead	يسير للأمام
in halves	يشطر إلى نصفين	go ashore	ينزل على الشاطئ
rhyme with	تصنع قافية مع	go along	يمشي بطول
Be felt with heart	يعرفه القلب	fall asleep	ينام
break for lunch	يستريح من أجل الغداء	focus / concentrate on	يركز على
break down	يتعطل / ينهار	agree with	يتفق مع
break out	تندلع / تنتشب	cut into	يقطع إلى
break's heart	يجعل شخص حزين	cut down	يقطع / يرشد / يحد من
break a promise	يخلف الوعد	take care of	يهتم بـ
break a record	يحطم رقم قياسي	work very well	يعمل بصورة جيداً جداً
break the law	يخالف القانون	different to	مختلف بالنسبة لـ
break the rules	يخالف القواعد	alive or dead	حياً أو ميتاً
follow the rules	يتبع القواعد	paraphrase a poem	يعيد صياغة قصيدة

Antonyms

simple	بسيط	complex	معقد
useful	مفيد	useless	عديم الفائدة
tolerant	متسامح	intolerant	متعصب
unconscious	فاقد الوعي	conscious	واع / مدرك
asleep	نائم	awake	مستيقظ / صاح
colourful	ملون	colourless	باهت / لا لون له
painful	مؤلم	painless	لا يسبب ألم

Derivatives

Verb		Noun		Adjective	
sadden	يُحزن	sadness	الحزن	sad	حزين
sleep	ينام	sleep	النوم	asleep	نائم
promise	يعد	promise	وعد	promising	واعد
ache	يشعر بالإعياء	ache / aching	ألم	aching	مؤلم / موجه
ease	يخفف / يهدئ	ease	سهولة / ارتياح	easy	سهل / يسير
awake	يستيقظ / يصحو	awakening	استيقاظ / يقظة	awake	مستيقظ / منتبه

Words go together

national identity	الهوية الوطنية	waste land	ارض بور
feel at ease	يشعر بارتياح	freedom of the press	حرية الصحافة
hopelessness / despair	اليأس	lose consciousness	يفقد الوعي
keep a promise	يفى بوعده	depression	إحباط
rural areas	المناطق الريفية	selflessness	الإيثار
urban areas	المناطق الحضرية	selfishness	الأنانية

Read the following carefully

Listening

Interviewer : In today's programme, we are looking at the poet Emily Dickinson. With me is the author Clare Lovell who has written a book which calls Emily the first modern poet. Clare, Emily Dickinson was born in 1830, so why do you call her modern?

Clare Lovell: Well, traditionally, poems usually have three or more verses and in every verse, there are words that rhyme at the end of some of the lines. Today, modern poems don't always follow these rules. They may have either no words that rhyme or words that partly rhyme, for example young and song. Many modern poets don't really follow any rules at all! But their poems work very well.

Interviewer : So did Emily Dickinson's poems break the usual rules?

Clare Lovell: Well, they were certainly different to most poems at that time. Many of her poems had very short lines, no titles, sometimes no punctuation!

Interviewer : So, are her poems challenging to read?

Clare Lovell: No, they aren't. Most of them were changed by her publishers so that they are more like normal poems.

Interviewer : Tell me about her life.

Clare Lovell: When she was a child, she was good at both writing and playing the piano. But she was an unusual adult. She always wore white clothes and she spent nearly all her life at home, where she wrote her poems. She spent about half of her time writing poems, and the other half helping with the housework, as her mother was very ill. She had a few friends but she didn't like to see them often. She preferred to write long letters to each friend instead. She wrote a lot of poems, but most of them were not published until after she died in 1886.

Interviewer : Did she marry?

Clare Lovell: No. We think that two men might have asked her to marry them but she accepted neither of their offers.

Interviewer : Which of her poems is most famous?

Clare Lovell: That is difficult to say! Only a few of her poems were published when she was alive, but you can read all of her 1,800 poems today. My favourite poem is called If I can stop. It is about how important it is to help people in life. It's very moving.

Interviewer : That sounds lovely, I'm going to read that poem next. Thank you for your time.

Reading

If I can stop one heart from **breaking**,
I shall not live **in vain**;
If I can **ease** one life the **aching**,
Or **cool** one pain,
Or help one **fainting robin**
Unto his **nest** again,
I shall not live in vain.

About Emily Dickinson:

Dickinson was born in **1830** in the United States and lived alone for most of her life while taking care of her parents. She is known for her poetry that tells of complex ideas (such as power and life/death) and bright scenes of nature. She wrote thousands of poems, though many were published after her death in **1886**.

THEME : We should live selflessly and care about others.

Summary :

Emily Dickinson wants to do everything she can to help people, she does not want to live in vain but in selflessness. The message of the poem is how to live selflessly =, helping and caring about others is always the right thing to do.

In this poem, Emily Dickinson talks about if she was able to stop or ease someone's pain, she would not live being selfish. In the poem, she talks about how if she could ease someone's life the aching or cool someone's pain and make them feel painless. An example of this would be in line 1, "If I can stop one heart from breaking, I shall not live in vain "The poet here is saying that she would not be selfish, and that she would go and help someone before their heart was to break. This emphasizes that when someone is to get a broken heart, she would do all that she could to help someone's pain go down. Another evidence would be in line 5 "or help one fainting robin unto his nest again "this is comparing the robin to humans, explaining that when we fall, we feel pain. How the author would want to help the robin and put it back into its nest.

"The best and most beautiful things in the world cannot be seen or even touched – they must be felt with the heart."

Helen Keller

"No one is useless in this world who lightens the burdens of another."

Charles Dickens

- **publish** (كتاب) ينشر - He works for a company that publishes books.
- **spread** ينتشر - ينشر - Terrorism spreads panic in society.
- **prevail** يعم - يسود - We hope safety will prevail / spread in our society.
- **be published : come out** تُنشر
- My last novel was published / came out last month.

- **a rule** قاعدة - It is a traffic rule to stop when the traffic light is red.
- **rule** يحكم - Who was the first president who ruled Egypt ?

- **spend + مفعول + (ing)** - She spent her time travelling around the world.
- **Stop مفعول from + (ing)** - If I can stop one heart from breaking, I.....

- **Waste** يبذر / يضيع - Be careful with your money. Don't waste it.
- Study hard and don't waste your time.
- **lose** يخسر / يفقد - I think that I lost my mobile at school.
- **miss** يفوته / يفتقد (transport / lecture / people / school / a goal / a record)
- I have missed you. Where have you been?
- The player missed the goal . - Why did he miss the record yesterday?

- **life** الحياة بوجه عام - Life is full of surprises. - Life is sweet .
- **a life / the life** حياة شخص أو شيء - I read about the life of our Prophet.

at the age of	فى عمر / سن ...	in the age of	فى عصر فلان
at the end of	فى نهاية (اسم)	In the end, ...	و فى النهاية، ...
instead of	بدلا من ...	instead.	بدلا من ذلك.
few	عدد قليل لا يكفى	a few	عدد لا بأس به
little	كمية لا تكفى	a little	كمية لا بأس بها
accept	يقبل (بعدها مفعول)	agree	يوافق (بعدها حرف جر)
vain	تافه - مختال	vein	وريد (جمع اوردة)
alike	متشابه	unlike	بخلاف
next + مدة	... القادم	... next.	... فيما بعد.
alone	وحده (بدون مساعدة)	lonely	وحيدا (شعور)

Language Functions

Summarising and paraphrasing التلخيص وإعادة الصياغة

What she's trying to say is that ...	Can you paraphrase / summarise that?	
I think I can summarise the (poem).	I think that it means.	In other words.

Choose the correct answer:

- 1- (**Moving – Playing – Removing – Move**) is making you feel strong emotions, especially sadness.
- 2- A (**butcher – polisher – publisher – filcher**) is a person or company that produces books for people to buy.
- 3- (**A life – Life – Live – Alive**) is the opposite of dead.
- 4- (**Changing – Challenging – Charging – Charming**) is something interesting but difficult to do.
- 5- My cousin wrote a novel but hasn't found a (**publish – publisher – publishing – published**) yet.
- 6- The film about the war was very (**funny – moving – Removing – joking**). A lot of people cried at the end!
- 7- Although the plane crashed, rescuers were pleased to find that all the passengers were (**dead – killed – murdered – alive**).
- 8- The walk across the mountains was beautiful but very (**nice – fantastic – challenging – fine**).
- 9- I knew that Ahmed would not be late because he never breaks a (**promise – record – heart – vase**).
- 10- If you drive too fast, you will (**break – brake – obey – lose**) the law. The police might fine you.
- 11- It broke Amira's (**liver – lung – heart – head**) when her best friend moved to Dubai.
- 12- The football team did not lose for 50 matches and they managed to (**miss – lose – win – break**) the record.
- 13- Do you know anyone who has broken (**a car – a bus – a record – a recorder**) at swimming?
- 14- In what ways can people break the (**law – low – row – raw**)?
- 15- Would you ever (**broke – breaking – broken – break**) a promise?
- 16- What do you think it means if you break (**in – on – with – for**) lunch?
- 17- What do you usually do in your school (**brake – breaking – bark – break**)?
- 18- In winter, we often see (**rabbits – turtles – rattles – robins**) in the trees in the park.
- 19- Hassan went to the dentist as the (**aching – aging – ash – rash**) of his teeth didn't stop.
- 20- It was very hot and busy in the market today and one tourist (**faded – fall – fainted – fed**).
- 21- We ran to the station but it was (**on – in – at – of**) vain. The train had already left.
- 22- It hurt when I hit my head on the shelf, but the pain soon (**ended – finish – begun – starts**).
- 23- (**Novels – Stories – Plays – Poems**) usually have three or more verses.

- 24- The tourists left the boat and went (**beach – shore – coast – ashore**) for the afternoon.
- 25- My father drove the car slowly as we saw a sandstorm (**ahead – head – hand – leg**).
- 26- Some of the fish in the market are still (**alive – dead – live – living**), so they are very fresh.
- 27- It's late, but the children are still (**sleep – asleep – awake – along**). I can hear them talking.
- 28- To get to the bank, walk (**long – along – longer – longest**) this road and turn right at the baker's.
- 29- Don't make too much noise. The baby is (**asleep – awake – studying – drawing**).
- 30- It was so hot inside the room that I thought I was going to (**faint – fat – paint – rent**).
- 31- I ran ten kilometres yesterday and now my legs (**ache – acre – cute – relaxing**).
- 32- Mona has a bad headache but this medicine should (**release – tease – ends – ease**) the pain.
- 33- The boat went slowly because there were rocks (**ashore – along – ahead – heading**).
- 34- We walked up to the castle (**in vain – in time – in a hurry – in dilemma**). It was closed
- 35- We walked (**alive – ashore – along – around**) the beach and watched the swimmers.
- 36- "No one is useless in this world who (**lightens – lights – lightening – puts**) the burdens of another."
- 37- The most beautiful thing in life must be (**filled – felt – fainted – faded**) with the heart.
- 38- To (**phrase – phase – copy – paraphrase**) means to write or say something in a shorter, simpler way.
- 39- Which words rhyme (**to – for – at – with**) slow?
- 40- Many modern poems don't follow the (**roles – rules – rulers – rollers**) of traditional poems.
- 41- Emily Dickinson was a (**storyteller – novelist – poet – playwright**).
- 42- My little sister liked to wear (**calories – colouring – colour – colourful**) clothes.
- 43- She spent a lot of her time (**travelling – to travel – traveled – travel**) around the country.
- 44- I like to watch this actor because he makes me (**to laugh – laugh – laughing – laughed**).
- 45- How many (**poets – verses – vases – faces**) does "If I can stop" have?

- 46- When Emily Dickinson was a child, she was good (**at – in – on – to**) playing the piano.
- 47- If I can stop one heart from breaking, I shall not live in (**van – veil – vet – vain**).
- 48- She hopes she can make someone's life less (**painful – pain – happy – heavy**).
- 49- The robin needs help into its nest because it is (**cautious – conscious – unconscious – fan**).
- 50- What can you do in your life to follow the (**advise – device – advisor – advice**) in the poem?
- 51- Ask someone to paraphrase or (**summary – sum – summer – summarise**) the poem.
- 52- (**Get – Put – Give – Take**) turns to read your song or poem to your partner.
- 53- A (**warm – worm – warn – worn**) is a long, thin animal, with no bones and no legs, that lives in soil.
- 54- My sister cut the watermelons (**by – in – with – at**) halves .
- 55- The criminal wanted us (**died – dead – live – alive**) or dead.
- 56- Criminals are cruel people who always (**mark – work – break – obey**) the law.
- 57- To find the bank, walk (**alive – ashore – along – around**) this road and it is on the right.
- 58- Ashraf is a good student. He never (**becomes – blocks – follows – breaks**) the rules.
- 59- The maths test was very (**challenging – easy – uncertain – promising**), so nobody did very well at it.
- 60- We were very tired after the sports competition and we were all (**along – ahead – awake – asleep**) by 9.00
- 61- Her father was killed in an accident so I couldn't (**stop – encourage – dislike – start**) her from crying.
- 62- A / An (**egret – robin – hen – goose**) is a small brown bird with an orange front.
- 63- To (**ease – harden – punish – easy**) is to make something less difficult.
- 64- Birds use straw to build their (**villas – nests – houses – rooms**).
- 65- Don't drink too much coffee or it will keep you (**along – ahead – awake – asleep**) at night
- 66- The best and most beautiful things in the world can't be seen or even (**to touch – touch – touching – touched**).
- 67- Emad hit his head and became (**uncommon – uncertain – unconscious – unhealthy**), but he is feeling much better now.
- 68- You can see Ali now as he is (**ashore – along – ahead – aboard**) of you.

Language Focus

Distributives

all, half, both, each, every, either, neither

- تستخدم **all** بمعنى (كل / جميع) مع اسم جمع أو اسم لا يُعد أو اسم مفرد:
- **All** Mona's friends are helping her now. - I love **all music** not just classical.
- **All** the information you need is on the internet.
- He bought gifts for **all of us**. :you / us / them تستخدم **all of** قبل ضمائر المفعول
- يمكن استخدام **of** أو عدم استخدامها مع الاسم الجمع أو الذي لا يعد بشرط وجود **the** قبله:
- **All (of) the workers** were given a pay rise.
- **All (of) this** has to go out into the rubbish bin.
- يمكن أن تأتي **all** بين الفاعل والفعل وبعد فعل **Be** وبعد الفعل الناقص بمعنى جميعاً:
- The students **are all** here now. We can start.
- **We all do** our best to pass the test.
- We **can all do** something about pollution.
- يمكن أن تأتي **all** كضمير فاعل وبعدها الفعل في صيغة المفرد غالباً وأحياناً في صيغة الجمع:
- **Is all** well, sir? –Yes, **all is** well. - **All were** happy with their exam results.
- يفضل عدم استخدام **the** بعد **all** في حالة التعبيرات الدالة على الزمن أما مع الاسم المفرد
فيجب استخدام **the** وهنا تساوى (اسم مفرد + **the whole**):
- She is tired because she has been working **all day**.
- We travelled to **all the world**. / to **the whole world**.
- **Not all** birds can fly. الجملة التي تبدأ بـ **all** تنفي باستخدام **Not** في أول الجملة:
- **None of** people can fly. **None of** وبعدها اسم جمع بمعنى "ولا واحد":

- تستخدم **Both** بمعنى "كلا من / كلاهما" للإشارة إلى اثنين ويأتي بعدها الفعل جمع:
- **Both** my parents are teachers. - He lost **both arms** in the accident.
- **Both** men and women have the right to do so.
- يمكن أن تأتي **Both** قبل الفعل الاساسى و بعد المساعد:
- My brother and my sister **both have** a laptop.
- They **were both** very nice, kind and beautiful.
- تستخدم **Both of** قبل ضمير المفعول والاسم المعرفة:
- I liked **both of the (two) games**. - She shouted at **both of them**.
- تستخدم **Both..... and** لربط فاعلين أو مفعولين والفعل بعدها جمع دائماً:
- **Both Egypt and Ethiopia** have agreed on the treaty.
- تستخدم **both of which / whom** في الجمل الموصولة بدلاً من **both of them**:
- She wrote two novels, **both of which** were famous.

- تستخدم **half (of)** مع اسم مفرد أو جمع أو لا يعد والفعل مفرد وجمع حسب الاسم:
- We spent **half** the time talking. - She ate **half of the cake** this morning.
- **Half of my friends** have seen the match.

- My house is **half a kilometer** from here. لا تستخدم of قبل تعبيرات الكمية:
- She cut the apple into two **halves**. تستخدم half مفرد أو جمع:
- تستخدم half وليس all مع التعبيرات (only / at least / by):
- Almost **half of us** were not allowed to vote. لاحظ استخدام half كجزء من بعض التعبيرات:
- The tickets were sold at **half price**.
- The team played badly in the **first half**. الشوط الاول

- تستخدم each / every بنفس المعنى "كل" مع أى اسم مفرد:
- I water the plants **every day / each day**.
- تستخدم each للإشارة الى اثنين أو أكثر بينما تشير every الى أكثر من اثنين:
- He was holding a gun in **each hand / in both hands**.
- These are my parents. **Each of them** works in a bank.
(They **both** work..... = They **each** work.....)
- تستخدم every وليس each مع practically / nearly / almost:
- I have visited **nearly every** country in Europe.
- تستخدم every مع اسم مفرد أو جمع مسبق بعدد للإشارة الى أحداث متكررة بشكل منتظم:
- I go to the hospital for a hearing test **once / twice every** month.
- There are buses into town **every ten** minutes.

- يستخدم بعد each of اسم جمع ثم فعل مفرد:
- **Each of the four tourists** has blonde hair. = **Each tourist** has
- تستخدم of بعد every اذا جاء بعدها كلمة one أو كلمات مثل part / piece / member:
- every part of the country / every member of the team.
- تستخدم every one of للأشخاص والأشياء بينما تستخدم everyone للأشخاص فقط:
- **Every one of** the students has a bike. - **Everyone** enjoyed the show.
- يمكن أن تستخدم each قبل الفعل أو في نهاية الجملة بمعنى لكل واحد:
- How much are these books? - They **each cost** \$30. = They **cost** \$30 **each**.
- تستخدم every بمعنى "كل ما يمكن تخيله من":
- I'd like to wish you **every success**. - She has **every reason** to be happy.
- تستخدم each عندما نفكر في أعضاء مجموعة ما كأفراد وتستخدم every عندما نفكر فيهم كوحدة واحدة (every student = all students):
- **Every student** will be examined orally. - **Every citizen** has a role in society.
- We'll cooperate to answer this exam. **Each student** will answer a question.

- تستخدم either في الإثبات لتشير الى أحد اختياريين أو احتمالين بمعنى "إما أو":
- **Either** mum **or** dad will come to pick you up. تربط فاعلين
- He will buy **either a tablet or a smart phone**. تربط مفعولين
- He **either washes** the clothes himself **or asks** his sister to do it. تربط فعلين
- عند استخدام either or ... في ربط فاعلين ، فإن الفعل عادة يتفق مع الفاعل الثاني:
- **Either** Ali **or his brother** is ready to help you.
- **Either** Mona **or her two sisters** are going to match.

- لا بد من استخدام **of either** في حالة وجود اسم جمع بعد **these / those / the / my**...
- I don't like **either of the photos**. (= I like **neither** of the photos.)
- I don't want **either of my parents** to know I lost my job.
- لاحظ استخدام **either** وبعدها اسم مفرد بمعنى **both** وبعدها اسم جمع (مثنى):
- There are shops on **either side** of the street. = There are shops on **both sides**.
- لاحظ استخدام **either** في نهاية الجملة المنفية بمعنى أيضا:
- Jane doesn't speak Latin. Sam doesn't speak it **either**.

- تستخدم **neither** وبعدها اسم مفرد ثم فعل مفرد بمعنى "ولا":

- **Neither answer is correct.**
- تستخدم **neither ... nor** لنفي فاعلين أو فعلين أو مفعولين (والفعل حسب الفاعل الثاني):
- He **neither drinks nor smokes**. - **Neither David nor Andrew is a doctor.**
- Ahmed bought **neither a computer nor a tablet**.
- بعد **neither of** يكون الاسم جمع والفعل عادة مفرد:
- **Neither of the boys is** clever at English.
- **Neither of them is** coming. They both are busy.
- لاحظ اننا نستخدم صيغة استفهام صوري عند ربط جملتين منفيتين بـ **Neither**:
- **Neither did we go to France nor did we travel to Italy.**
- تستخدم **neither** أو **nor** للتعبير عن الموافقة بالنفي ويأتي بعدهما صيغة استفهام:
- She didn't see the film. **Neither did I**. - He has never been to Italy, **nor have I**.
- تستخدم **neither** غالبا بمعنى واحد من اثنين أما **none** فتستخدم بمعنى واحد من مجموعة:
- All the boys are awake, but **none of them is / are** ready. يفضل الفعل الجمع

Choose the correct answer :

- 1- Poems usually have three or more verses and in (**all – half – every – either**) verse, there are words that rhyme.
- 2- They may have (**either – neither – all – both**) no words that rhyme, or words that partly rhyme.
- 3- When she was a child, she was good at (**both – all – every – either**) writing and playing the piano.
- 4- She spent nearly (**either – each – every – all**) her life at home.
- 5- She spent about (**both – every – each – half**) of her time writing poems.
- 6- She preferred to write long letters to (**each – all – neither – half**) friend instead.
- 7- Two men wanted to marry her, but she accepted (**either – every – neither – all**) of their offers.
- 8- (**Every – All – Either – Neither**) the students in our class are from Cairo.
- 9- The cake was cut into six pieces, so three of us ate (**both – every – each – half**) of it and we kept the other three pieces until later.
- 10- The teacher told the class that (**every – both – all – either**) student had done very well that year.

- 11- I was offered tea or coffee, but I had (**either – neither – all – both**) of them because I don't like hot drinks.
- 12- The tour guide gave (**both – half – each – either**) tourist a ticket to enter the museum.
- 13- My mother said I could have (**either – neither – all – both**) a cheese or a chicken sandwich.
- 14- I was very hungry so I ate (**both – half – each – either**) the cheese and the chicken salad.
- 15- We looked at two hotels on the internet and (**all – every – never – either**) of them would be great for a holiday.
- 16- (**Each – Both – Half – Every**) of the five tourists from the north of Europe had blond hair.
- 17- Tarek loves tennis and watches (**all – every – either – both**) match on television.
- 18- There were two photos of me on my cousin's phone but I liked (**all – every – neither – ever**) of them.
- 19- I don't like (**both – neither – either – nor**) of the T-shirts.
- 20- My sister bought two new skirts and (**both – every – all – ever**) of them are long and green.
- 21- The film was very boring and (**either – half – all – every**) of the people left before the end.
- 22- I need to be good at (**each – all – both – every**) speaking and writing English to get the job
- 23- (**Each – Half – Both – All**) engineer in the factory was given a separate job to do.
- 24- (**Each – Neither – Either – All**) the students in my class speak English very well.
- 25- Do you prefer coffee or tea? - I like (**both – either – all – neither**) of them. I don't like hot drinks.
- 26- At a restaurant, would you rather have fish or meat? - I like (**every – both – half – never**), but I usually have chicken.
- 27- Which member of your family is the best at speaking English? - (**All – Both – Every – Each**) of them speaks some English, but my mother is the best!
- 28- How many students in your class live near you? - About (**each – every – both – half**) of them are from my village.
- 29- Which school subject do you think is most interesting? - (**Ever – All – Every – Half**) subject is different. I don't think I have a favourite.
- 30- Do you prefer to have a holiday on a beach or in the countryside? - I like (**every – half – ever – both**), but it depends on the time of year.
- 31- You can stay in (**neither – both – either – all**) the three-star Sand Hotel or the two-star Blue Hotel.

- 32- (**Both – Either – All – Neither**) the three-star Sand Hotel and the two-star Blue Hotel have a cafe for breakfast.
- 33- (**Each – All – Both – Half**) room in the hotel has a fridge and TV.
- 34- (**Neither – All – Each – Every**) hotel has a restaurant, but there is a lovely restaurant next to the Sand Hotel.
- 35- (**Neither – All – Each – Every**) our staff members are trained to make sure that you have a perfect holiday.
- 36- We want (**every – all – both – either**) visitor to our hotels to leave with a smile on their face!
- 37- A train leaves to Cairo (**every – half – each – either**) four hours.
- 38- I have three sisters. (**Both – Every – All – Ever**) of them are teachers.
- 39- (**Neither – Both – Either – Half**) Sahar and Sara are nice. I like them.
- 40- I go to evening classes (**each – half – all – every**) two days.
- 41- There are two restaurants in the town and (**all – half – every – both**) of them are extremely old.
- 42- All Mona's money (**are – were – is – have been**) at home .
- 43- The teacher gave (**every – a little – never – each**) of the students a piece of paper.
- 44- All Sara's friends (**were – are – is – was**) helping her at this moment.
- 45- He ate half (**of – off – on – at**) the cake this morning.
- 46- Half of my friends (**like – likes – is liking – has liked**) tennis.
- 47- My house is (**half – all – each – half of**) a kilometre from here.
- 48- Each student (**wear – wears – are wearing – were wearing**) a uniform.
- 49- Every citizen (**have – has – are having – were having**) a role in society.
- 50- (**Both – Neither – Half – All**) answer is correct.
- 51- I have two brothers and (**both – neither – half – none**) of them are doctors.
- 52- Neither Hani nor his children (**are – is – were – was**) at home yesterday.
- 53- Neither (**did he go – he went – went he – did he went**) out nor did he stop talking .
- 54- We can spend our holiday (**half – all – each – either**) in Alexandria or in Sharm.
- 55- (**All – Both – Either – Each**) the rice that you need is in the cupboard.
- 56- Nagwa is enjoying her new job because (**both – all – every – either**) day of the week is different.
- 57- Grandmother says that my brothers and I can (**each – every – all – either**) take a cake from the kitchen
- 58- Neither the teacher nor the students (**is – are – have – was**) in the class.
- 59- The light from the sun is useful for (**neither – each – both – either**) people and plants.
- 60- There are bid villas and beautiful houses along (**either – none – all – both**) banks of the Nile.

Exercises on Unit 5

2- Read the following passage and answer the questions:

While I was walking along the road the other day I happened to notice a small brown leather purse lying on the pavement. I picked it up and opened it to see if I could find out the owner's name. There was nothing inside it except some small change and a rather old photograph—a picture of a woman and a young girl about twelve years old, who looked like the woman's daughter. I put the photograph back and took the purse to the police station, where I handed it to the sergeant in charge. Before I left, the sergeant made a note of my name and address in case the owner of the purse wanted to write and thank me.

That evening I went to have dinner with an uncle and aunt of mine. They had also invited another person, a young woman, so that we would sit on the table. The young woman's face was familiar, but I could not remember where I had seen it. I was quite sure that we had not met before. In the course of conversation, however, the young woman happened to remark that she had lost her purse that afternoon. I at once remembered where I had seen her face. She was the young girl in the photograph, although she was now much older. Of course she was very surprised when I was able to describe her purse to her. Then I explained that I had recognised her face from the photograph I had found in the purse. My uncle insisted on going round to the police station immediately to claim the purse. As the police sergeant handed it over, he said that it was a remarkable coincidence that I had found not only the purse but also the person who had lost it.

A) Choose the best answer.

- 1- The purse which the writer found
 - a) was empty
 - b) had some money in it
 - c) had a few coins and a photograph in it
 - d) had an old photograph in it
- 2- The writer recognised the young woman because
 - a) he had met her somewhere before
 - b) she was the woman in the photograph
 - c) she often had dinner with his uncle and aunt
 - d) she looked rather like the young girl in the photograph
- 3- The girl felt when the man described the purse for her.
 - a) afraid
 - b) shocked
 - c) surprised
 - d) happy
- 4- It was a good coincidence for the writer to find
 - a) the purse owner
 - b) the purse
 - c) the police station
 - d) the owner and its purse
- 5- There were person on the table for dinner.
 - a) three
 - b) four
 - c) five
 - d) six
- 6- The underlined word “they” refer to

a) the guests

b) the uncle and the aunt

c) the sergeant and the writer

d) the purse and the face

B) Answer the following question:-

7- Why did the sergeant make a note of the writer's name and address?

8- Where did the people in the passage go to get the purse back?

9- What did the young lady say that made the writer know she was the owner of the purse?

10- Why did the writer open the purse once he saw it?

4) Finish the following dialogue:

Ramy and Shady are talking about a friend who has a new job.

Ramy : Ahmed has got a new job at the bank in Damietta.

Shady : 1) When does he start?

Ramy : Next week. 2)

Shady : Yes, I'm sure he can't wait to start. 3)

Ramy : For two reasons. Firstly, because they pay him well.

4)

Shady : Yes, you must be good with numbers to work in a bank!

Ramy : He has friends in Damietta, too.

Shady : 5) ?

Ramy : Yes. He knows Damietta very well, too. Look. This is the title of his new job. It's very long.

Shady : 6) ?

Ramy : Yes. To paraphrase, it means that he is in charge of business accounts.

5- Write a paragraph of about (120) words on ONE (1) of the following:

a) The role of youth towards their country. b) The internet is a mixed blessing.

6- A) Translate into Arabic:

1- In 2003, Dr Karimat El-Sayed won an award as one of the world's best scientists.

2- Egyptian women have always played a vital role in development projects.

3- For his great poems, Ahmed Shawki was called "The prince of poets".

B) Translate ONE (1) sentence only into English:

1- هل تعلم أن أول أطباء أسنان في العالم كانوا مصريين؟

2- احترس! هذا المكان أعمق من أن يسبح فيه الأطفال.

3- غاية الحياة الانسانية خدمة الاخرين والتعاطف معهم والرغبة فى مساعدتهم.

4- أنت أعمى وأنا أصم أبكم، ضع يدك فى يدى فيدرك أحدنا الآخر.

5- ما قيمة حياتك إن لم تكن مفيدا للآخرين؟

Unit 6: Work-life balance

Key Vocabulary

freelance	حر	separate	يفصل
accounts	حسابات	task	مهمة
organisation	منظمة	balance	يوازن / توازن
take on	يتولي مسؤولية / ينفذ	limit	يحد / حد / يقلل
take off	يأخذ أجازة	stress	التوتر
client	عميل (زبون دائم)	stressful	متوتر / مُجهَد
deadline	آخر موعد	lack / shortage	نقص
sociable	اجتماعي / ودود	flexible	مرن
regular	منتظم	contact	يتصل بـ

Vocabulary

community	مجتمع	particular	خاص
include	يشمل	purpose	غرض
book designer	مصمم الكتاب	business	عمل
normal / ordinary	عادي	flexibility	المرونة
accountant	محاسب	action / event	حدث
organise	ينظم	manage stress	يتحكم في الضغط
regularly	بانتظام	project manager	مدير مشروع
relaxing	مريح	charitable	خيرى
soup / soap	شربة / صابون	voluntary	تطوعي
exactly	بالضبط	express	يعبر عن
a company	شركة	service	خدمة
company	صحبة	colleague	زميل عمل
own timetable	جدول مواعيد خاص	value / valuable	قيمة / قيم
difficult decision	قرار صعب	poster	ملصق
receive	يستقبل	athlete	رياضي
until late	لوقت متأخر	situations	مواقف
as well	أيضا	quality time	وقت للأسرة (للترفيه)
tips	نصائح / بقشيش	quantity time	كم من الوقت
local x national	محلي x قومي	vote	يصوت (في الانتخابات)
terrific	هائل / رائع	independent	مستقل
exhausted	منهك / مُرهق	occupation	حرفة
exhausting	مُرهق	interrupt	يقاطع
loyal / sincere	مخلص	envy	يحسد
wherever / anywhere	في أى مكان	rewarding	مجزي

Prepositions & Expressions

at all times	فى كل الاوقات	take after	يشبهه
suffer from	يعانى من	lead to	يؤدى الى
separate ... from	يفصل ... عن	have a child	يرزق بطفل
make sure	يتأكد	lack of	نقص في
well-known / famous for	مشهور بـ	ask for help	يطلب مساعدة
as though = as if	كما لو	according to	وفقاً لـ
similar to	متشابه لـ	available for	موجود في
the same as	نفس الشكل مثل	time off	وقت اجازة
get the balance	يحقق التوازن	even in free time	حتى في وقت الفراغ
get a call from	يتلقى مكالمة من	find it easy to	يجد من السهل أن
get the work done	يقوم بالعمل	carry around	يأخذ ... الى كل مكان
train for	يتدرب من اجل	the best way out of	افضل طريق للخروج
help ... with	يساعد في	spend time with	يقضى وقت مع
have no time to	ليس لديه وقت لـ	move away from	ينتقل بعيدا عن
manage my time	أرتب وقتي	take a break	يأخذ فترة راحة
on time	فى الوقت المحدد	meet the deadlines	يفى بالأمر فى مواعده
carry on working for	يستمر فى العمل لـ	travel to meetings	يسافر لاجتماعات
work on a project	يعمل بمشروع	on my own = alone	بمفردي

Antonyms

pessimistic	متشائم	optimistic	متفائل
freelance	حر	employed	موظف
do well	يؤدي أداء جيداً	do badly	يؤدي أداء سيئ
balanced	متوازن	imbalanced	غير متوازن
stressful	مُجهَد	relaxing	مريح / يدعو للاسترخاء
female	أنثي	male	ذكر
advantages / merits / pros	مزايا	disadvantages/demerits/cons	عيوب

Derivatives

Verb فعل	Noun اسم	Adjective صفة
organise ينظم	organisation منظمة	organised منظم
comfort يرتاح - يريح	comfort راحة	comfortable مريح
exhaust يرهق	exhaustion أرهاق	exhausted مرهق
repeat يكرر	repetition تكرار	repeated متكرر
relax يسترخى - يريح	relaxation استرخاء	relaxing مريح - للراحة
separate يفصل	separation فصل	separated منفصل

Words go together

financial crisis	أزمة مالية	positive thinking	تفكير ايجابي
freelance journalist	صحفي حر	make notes	يدون ملاحظات
production sector	قطاع الإنتاج	equal rights	حقوق متساوية
questionnaire	استطلاع / استفتاء	equality	مساواة
social class	طبقة اجتماعية	independently	بشكل مستقل
endure hardships	يتحمل المصاعب	United Nations	الأمم المتحدة

Read the following carefully

Listening

Speaker 1 : I'm a freelance writer. I have just had my first child, so I'm too busy to go to work every day. What I like about freelance work is that you can choose how much work you want to do. Before my son was born, I worked very hard. Sometimes I worked so hard that I had to work until late at night. Now, I'm only doing a few hours of work a day. Later; as my son gets older; I'll increase the amount of work that I do. The problem with being a freelance worker is that you don't always get regular work. There are times when you can't work hard enough to live comfortably. Also, it can be hard to make money and look after my family.

Speaker 2: When I was younger, I worked such long hours that I didn't have any time to myself. The best thing about freelance work is that you can choose your working hours. When you don't have to go to an office each day, you can manage your time. Because you're working for yourself, you can make your own timetable. But of course it is very important that you get the work done on time. You must meet the deadlines.

Speaker 3: When I moved away from the city I was working in, I had to make a difficult decision: either to find a new job, or to carry on working for the same company, but freelance. I'm a book designer, so my job is one which can be done almost anywhere. All I need is a computer and the internet, and I can do my job wherever I want to. I need to travel to meetings, but I can take my work with me. When you're a freelance worker, you can choose where you want to do your job.

Speaker 4: I'm a freelance project manager for a big organisation. I work on lots of different projects. The best thing about working freelance is that I can choose exactly which projects to take on. I find my own clients, so I usually look for the ones that provide the most interesting projects. The disadvantage of this is that you can't always find new clients to work with when you are freelance. If you are working for an organisation, they find the clients for you.

Speaker 5: I'm a freelance accountant. I like my job, but it sometimes gets lonely working on your own. It is more sociable when you are working in an office. Also, freelance workers have to do their own accounts! For an accountant that's not a problem, but I know other freelance workers who find doing their job and doing their accounts is too difficult for them to do on their own.

Reading

Finding a balance

A: separate work from home:

It is important for people to separate their work life from their home life. At the end of the work day, people should focus on the fact that this is also the end of that activity or task. Mothers and fathers both often need to work, but they have to balance their family and work. Parents who work should make sure that they spend enough quality time with their children.

B: Don't carry work around:

Many people find it difficult to get the balance right between their work and their free time. Modern technology means that some people can be at work wherever they are. People can carry laptops and phones with them at all times which means that they can read their e-mails even in their free time. This allows many people to have more flexible working hours or to work from home. The problem is that some companies find it so easy to contact people that they expect them to be available for work all the time. Even people who are relaxing at home may get an important call from work that they have to answer.

C: Take a break:

Although most workers enjoy what they do, people need rest as well. Some people work such long hours that they may suffer from stress. This can lead to a lack of sleep and feeling exhausted at work. People should remember that athletes who train for a competition always take breaks, so why should they not do the same from work? A break can also help to limit the number of days they need to take off because of illness.

D: Ask for help:

Everyone has times when work can be difficult. If you have a problem at work, ask your manager for advice. He or she should be able to help you. This is often the best way out of stressful situations. It is part of a manager's job to help people with their problems.

Definitions

accounts	a record of the money a company or person has received and spent
freelance	working independently for several different organizations
deadline	a date or time by which you must finish something
regular	repeated, normal or usual

client	someone who pays a person or organisation for services or advice
sociable	friendly and likes to be with other people
take on	to start being responsible for
separate	to split between two things so as not to communicate with each other
stress	continuous feelings of worry about your work or personal life
task	a piece of work that someone has to do especially one that's difficult
balance	when 2 equal things are treated as though they're equally important
lack	when you don't have something or not have enough of something.
limit	to keep something less than a particular point, amount or number...
take off	not to go to work for a period of time
stressful	making you very worried and unable to relax
suffer from	to experience physical or emotional pain
organisation	a group of people with a particular purpose, such as a business

Language Notes

make - do - get

- نستخدم الفعل (make) عندما نتحدث عن تقديم أو بناء أو عمل شيء جديد :

- make timetable يعمل جدول مواعيد - make a plan / money / a decision

- نستخدم (do) عندما نتحدث عن أداء أو تنفيذ شيء ما :

- do work يؤدي عملا - do accounts يُجْري الحسابات - did well يؤدي أداء جيداً

- نستخدم (get) عندما نتحدث عن الحصول على شيء ما :

- get money يحصل علي المال - get work يحصل علي عمل

- الفعل (take off) له معاني كثيرة :

take..sth..off	يأخذ أجازة	I can't take off any time this week.
take..sth..off	It was hot so I took off my jacket.	
يخلع (ملابس) - ينزع	Why don't you take off that silly beard?	
	The surgeon took off his left leg.	
take off	تقلع (طائرة)	The plane took off at half past four.
take off	يصبح ناجحاً مشهوراً فجأة	Her sports career took off after she won the competition.
take..sb..off	يسخر من / يُقَلِّد	Adel is clever at taking off his sister.

allow مصدر + مفعول + يسمح + to - The internet allows me to work from home.

let مصدر + مفعول + يسمح - His father lets him go out everyday with his friends.

- لاحظ الفارق في المعنى بين الكلمات الآتية :

- feel: يشعر بشيء، يحس بشيء - He felt her hand on his shoulder.

- feel: يتلمس، يتحسس - She felt the cloth to see how good it was.

- feel: يشعر بشيء معنوي - I felt hostility in his voice.

- **training:** (تدريب - لاكتساب معرفة / خبرة / مهارة)
 - She owes her flexibility to her early training as a dancer.
 - He received training in first aid.
- **exercise:** (تمرين - تدريب (لتحسين لياقة))
 - Exercise, such as running, is good for your health.
 - Although she does not have time for much exercise, she is very healthy.
- **exercise:** (تمرين - تدريب (نشاط عقلي / واجب دراسي))
 - Chess is an exercise for the mind
 - The student did geometry exercises after school

- **remind... sb. ... of sth.:** يذكّر شخصاً بشيء
 - The alarm reminded Tamer of his appointment.
- **remind... sb. ... that:** يذكّر شخصاً بأن
 - Remind me that I **have** a doctor's appointment tomorrow!
- **remind... sb. ... to + inf. :** يذكّر شخصاً بأن
 - Remind me to buy a newspaper on the way home, or I will forget.
- **remind... sb. ... of ... sb. :** يُشَبِّه
 - Your father reminds me of a famous actor!

- **tell:** يقول - يُعلم - يُخبر
 - Tell me what he said. I finally told her what happened.
 - If someone is bullying you, tell the teacher
- **tell: recount: a story** يروي - يقص - يسرد قصة
 - He told the story to his daughter.
- **tell: distinguish** يُميز
 - Can you tell the difference between these two colours?

It + is / was + adj. + for + شخص + to + inf. :
 - It is funny for children to read about the small people of Lilliput.

work for	يعمل لدى (من أجل)	work on	يعمل في شيء معين
work with	يعمل مع (شخص / فريق)	work in	يعمل في (مكان / مجال)

purpose	غرض	propose	عرض
in purpose	عمداً	on purpose	معروض
a similar متشابه	the same ...	نفس الـ
contact	يتصل بـ	connect	يوصل
task	مهمة (عمل مؤقت)	mission	مهمة (عمل للانجاز)
action	حدث (حركة و عمل)	event	حدث هام (تاريخيا)
older	اكبر من غيره	elder	اكبر (داخل الاسرة فقط)
almost	تقريباً (اكثر قليلاً)	nearly	تقريباً (أقل قليلاً)

include (جزء من كل) يتضمن - We study different languages including French.
contain (شئ بداخله) يحتوى - This bag contains some important papers.
consist of (كل الاجزاء) يتكون من - This flat consists of three rooms, and

Language Functions

Asking for reasons	Giving reasons
Can you tell me why?	(It's) because ...
Why ...?	For (two / three) reasons.
Is that the reason ...?	That's one of the reasons.
What's the reason for ...?	Mainly because ...
What (did you choose her) for?	Firstly / Secondly, because ...

Choose the correct answer:

- 1- An (**area – era – organization – ore**) is a group of people with a particular purpose, such as a business.
- 2- A (**daycare – day dream – deadline – dead**) is a date or time by which you must finish something.
- 3- To take (**off – up – out – on**) means to start being responsible for.
- 4- A (**client – clerk – customary – assistant**) is someone who pays a person or organisation for services or advice.
- 5- (**Gradual – Regard – Regular – Irregular**) means repeated, normal or usual.
- 6- A (**free time – freedom – freelance – free style**) is working independently for several different organisations.
- 7- A (**social – society – sociable – solo**) person is friendly and likes to be with other people.
- 8- (**Accounts – Counts – Accountants – Courts**) is a record of the money that a company or person has received and spent.
- 9- The company has an accountant to do its (**counts – accounts – works – tusks**).
- 10- Tarek isn't employed by the computer company. He is a (**labourer – freelance – regular – gradual**) worker.
- 11- It's good to do (**regular – burglar – burger – irregular**) exercise, so I go running every day.
- 12- Manal has to finish the work tonight because there is an important (**rendezvous – date – history – deadline**) tomorrow morning.
- 13- Hamdi is very tired because he decided to (**take off – take on – take down – take after**) two new projects at work.
- 14- My father will be late home today because he has a meeting with an important (**client – club – curb – cutlery**).
- 15- Your brother is very (**shy – ashamed – social – sociable**). He likes talking to everyone he meets!

- 16- The United Nations is an important (**team – group – organization – organ**) that works all over the world.
- 17- Before the start of the new year, the teachers work together to (**do – make – take – give**) a school timetable.
- 18- Some graduates think that it is harder to (**get – make – bring – visit**) work today than it used to be.
- 19- Before I start revising, I always (**get – do – make – got**) a revision plan.
- 20- Sami (**did – made – get – let**) a lot of work last night, but he still didn't finish his homework!
- 21- How much money did Aya (**get – do – got – did**) when she was working in the bank last year?
- 22- My friend Mona (**did – made – get – got**) really well in the test last week.
- 23- When I was young, my mother often (**stopped – encouraged – separated – supported**) me from my brother to stop us from arguing.
- 24- Adel's job is very (**stressful – balanced – pressure – press**) He is a firefighter and his work is often very dangerous
- 25- The sports team has a good (**distinctive – balance – balanced – lanes**) between people who are fast and people who are strong.
- 26- Tamer never goes on a plane. He (**frighten – fears – suffers – saves**) from a fear of flying.
- 27- The teacher gave us all a / an (**test – exam – task – idea**). Mine was to interview four students.
- 28- In northern Europe, some people become ill in winter because there's a (**lack – luck – lick – leak**) of sunshine.
- 29- You should (**rise – limit – increase – raise**) the number of sweets you eat. They are very bad for your teeth.
- 30- After our walk in the mountains, I (**felt – suffered – fell – fallen**) really tired.
- 31- Are you coming to football (**training – exercise – train – playing**) after school?
- 32- I can't phone my mother because she is available (**for – at – on – up**) work.
- 33- Please (**remind – tell – say – remember**) me to buy my cousin a present, or I will forget!
- 34- My grandmother isn't well. She often suffers (**of – from – at – for**) headaches.
- 35- People who work long hours often suffer from (**press – stressful – cold – stress**).
- 36- Your father reminds me (**of – with – by – from**) a famous actor!
- 37- I have to finish some (**tax – tasks – tusks – toast**) at the office before going home.
- 38- When you make the cake, you need to separate the white of the egg (**in – at – on – from**) the yellow

- 39- The plane took (**in – on – off – to**) at half past four.
- 40- I can't take (**in – on – off – to**) any time this week.
- 41- It was hot so I took (**in – on – off to**) my jacket.
- 42- Her sports career took (**in – on – off – to**) after she won the competition.
- 43- The problem is that you don't always (**get – make – give – found**) regular work.
- 44- If you are working (**with – on – about – for**) an organisation, they find the clients for you.
- 45- It is important for people to (**separate – mix – join – include**) their work life from their home life.
- 46- (**Remember – Redret – Remind – Reverse**) me to buy a newspaper on the way home, or I will forget.
- 47- He says his legs will (**feel – suffer – save – see**) after that long run!
- 48- Although she does not have time for much (**work – training – exercise – suffer**), she is very healthy.
- 49- You can (**do – make – get – suffer**) your own timetable.
- 50- I'm only (**doing – making – getting – playing**) a few hours of work a day.
- 51- Freelance workers have to (**do – make – get – escape**) their own accounts.
- 52- The problem with being a freelance worker is that you don't always (**do – make – get – come**) regular work.
- 53- It can be hard to (**do – make – get – suffer**) money and look after a family.
- 54- What hinders our projects is (**luck – lucky – lack – lick**) of money.
- 55- What are the advantages (**in – on – of – about**) freelance work?
- 56- Parents who work should make sure that they spend enough (**quantity – amount – quality – quickly**) time with their children .
- 57- Many people find it difficult to get the (**stress – influence – freelance – balance**) right between their work and their free time.
- 58- This allows many people (**have – to have – having – to having**) more flexible working hours.
- 59- The problem is that some companies find it so easy to (**connect – connection – contact – commit**) people.
- 60- My friend (**made – did – bought – get**) a lot of money when he worked as an actor.
- 61- The good father can (**waste – balance – differ – stress**) between his family and his job.
- 62- The bank (**accountants – clerks – officials – clients**) have deposited a lot of money.
- 63- My father has given me a lot of (**sweets – fruit – works – tasks**) to do so I can't play today.
- 64- The publisher told the writer that the (**deadline – debt – line – end**) for his new book was next April.

- 65- Before exams, you should (**do – get – make – take**) enough revision .
- 66- Yunis was ill last year and had to take a lot of time (**from – in – on – off**) work.
- 67- Fatma and Mona are very good friends and never like to be (**helpful – separated – obeyed – together**).
- 68- I think that parents should (**increase – recycle – recover – limit**) the amount of time that children play games.
- 69- Did you see the rocket when it took (**on – down – off – out**) yesterday ?
- 70- We need someone to do the company (**accountants – accounts – record – files**).
- 71- It is usual for people to suffer from (**stressful – distressed – stress – stressed**) when they have an important job.
- 72- This book has some useful (**tops – taps – tapes – tips**) on how best to revise.
- 73- My friend is a (**freelance – for free – free of charge – set free**) journalist .
- 74- I don't need this new mobile. (**Main – Mean – Means – Mainly**) someone bought me a new one for my birthday.

Language Focus

Linkers of Result الروابط الدالة على النتيجة

1- so + ظرف / صفة + that + sentence..... جدا لدرجة أن

- The shirt was **so nice that** I couldn't resist buying it.
- She ran **so quickly that** she could catch the train.

2- such (a / an) + adj. + اسم مفرد يُعَد + that +

such + adj. + اسم لا يُعَد أو جمع + that +

- He was **such a stupid boy that** he failed all the tests.
- It was **such heavy traffic that** we arrived so late.

◆ إذا بدأت الجملة بـ **So / Such** يأتي بعدها صيغة استفهام صوري:

- **So strong was** the wind **that** we couldn't go out.
- **Such a clever student was he that** got the full mark.

◆ لاحظ هذه الصيغة تستخدم مع المفرد فقط ونستخدم فيها **so** وليس **such**:

so + صفة + a / an + اسم مفرد + that

- It was **so interesting a book that** I read it twice.

◆ يمكن حذف **that** في جمل **so / such**:

- She was **such a lazy girl**; she failed all her exams.

◆ لاحظ أنه يمكن استخدام اسم فقط مع **such ... that** مثل:

Fool / gentleman / coward / genius / idiot أھبل / liar

- He was **such an idiot that** nobody would hire him.

◆ تستخدم such بمعنى very ولكن لاحظ موقع اداة النكرة:

- He has **such** a big house. = He has a **very** big house.

◆ نستخدم so قبل few / little / many / much ولكن نستخدم such قبل a lot of:

- There was **so much smoke** that they couldn't see.

- There was **such a lot of smoke** that they couldn't see.

◆ تستخدم such قبل الاسم أحيانا بمعنى: هذا النوع من This kind of..

- It's a waste of money to buy **such** furniture.

- She's very good at solving **such** problems.

◆ وتستخدم such للتعبير عن التعجب:

- She is **such** a liar!

- Don't be **such** a fool!

3- enough + to + inf. + صفة / ظرف ايجابي

- He was **rich enough** to buy an expensive car.

- They fought **bravely enough** to win the battle.

◆ يمكن أن تستخدم enough قبل الاسم بمعنى ما يكفي من

- She didn't have **enough courage** to tell him the truth.

◆ تستخدم for + noun / pronoun في حالة اختلاف الفاعل:

- The test was **easy enough** for him to pass.

4- too + to + inf..... لا جداً لدرجة أن لا

- He was **too ill** to go to school. لاحظ أن معنى الجملة منفي

◆ لاحظ استخدام enough مع الصفات الايجابية و too مع الصفات السلبية:

- The test was **too difficult** for him to pass.

Choose the correct answer:

1- That salad was (**so – such – too – enough**) nice that I'll ask the restaurant for the recipe.

2- It was (**so – such – too – enough**) a long film that some people fell asleep before the end.

3- The stadium is big (**so – such – too – enough**) to hold 50,000 spectators.

4- That ladder is (**so – such – too – enough**) long to be put on the back of your car.

5- Today is (**so – such – too – enough**) much hot to play tennis outside.

6- Elephants are (**so – such – too – enough**) powerful that they can push over trees.

7- This is (**so – such – too – enough**) an old tree that it is amazing it is still alive.

8- Nobody has been to the top of this mountain because it is (**so – such – too – enough**) dangerous to climb.

- 9- This book is (**so – such – too – enough**) famous that nearly everyone has read it.
- 10- I wanted to buy a new phone but it was too expensive for me (**buy – buying – to buy – too buy**).
- 11- The hat was (**to – such – too – enough**) small. I couldn't wear it.
- 12- The hat wasn't big (**so – such – too – enough**) to wear.
- 13- The boys ran (**so – such – too – enough**) slowly to win the race.
- 14- Ola is very intelligent (**so – such – too – enough**) to pass the exam easily.
- 15- Hamdi is (**so – such – too – enough**) a strong man to be good at weight-lifting.
- 16- Hana didn't feel (**so well – such well – too well – well enough**) to come to school.
- 17- Is it ever (**so – such – too – enough**) hot to play games in the park?
- 18- Have you ever read a book that was so (**interesting – interest – interesting book – interesting one**) that you wanted to read it again?
- 19- Have you ever seen such (**funny film – funny – a funny film – funnily**) that you couldn't stop laughing?
- 20- Have you ever read a story that was (**too difficult – so difficult – enough difficult – difficult enough**) to believe?
- 21- Is it ever (**too cold – so cold – enough cold – cold enough**) to snow in Egypt?
- 22- I'm (**so – such – too – enough**) busy to go to work every day.
- 23- Sometimes I worked (**so – such – too – enough**) hard that I had to work until late at night.
- 24- There are times when you can't work hard (**so – such – too – enough**) to live comfortably.
- 25- I worked (**so – such – too – enough**) long hours that I didn't have any time to myself.
- 26- Other freelance workers find doing their accounts is (**so – such – enough – too**) difficult for them to do on their own.
- 27- The exercise was (**so – such – too – enough**) easy that I finished it in two minutes.
- 28- Rami is careful (**so – such – too – enough**) to make very few mistakes.
- 29- This soup is (**so – such – too – enough**) hot to eat.
- 30- The question is (**such difficult – difficult enough – so difficult – too difficult**) for the little boy to answer.
- 31- It's (**so – such – too – enough**) an amazing play that you can't miss it.

- 32- They are (**so – such – too – enough**) long questions that we don't have time to answer them all.
- 33- The test was (**too difficult – so difficult – enough difficult – difficult enough**) to finish.
- 34- It wasn't (**too dark – so dark – enough dark – dark enough**) to see any stars in the sky.
- 35- The food in that restaurant is (**too good – so good – enough good – good enough**) that we go every week.
- 36- It was (**such long – so long – such a long – long enough**) game that we didn't finish it until ten o'clock!
- 37- He isn't (**tall enough – too tall – so tall – such tall**) to touch the ceiling.
- 38- This mobile is (**too – enough – very – such**) expensive for him to buy.
- 39- He was (**so – such – very – too**) a coward that he ran away from the battlefield.
- 40- These are (**so – very – such a – such**) tight shoes that I can't wear them.
- 41- The suit wasn't cheap (**so – such – too – enough**) for him to buy.
- 42- It was (**so – too – such – such a**) rainy day that we stayed indoors.
- 43- My back aches (**so – such – enough – too**) badly that I can't lift anything anymore.
- 44- Ahmed thinks that it is (**so – such – enough – too**) hot to play tennis in the park today.
- 45- It is (**so – such a – enough – too**) big car that all the family can travel in it.
- 46- The phone is (**expensive enough – too expensive – so expensive – such an expensive**) for her to buy. She doesn't have enough money.
- 47- The light from the sun is (**so – such – enough – too**) strong that you can't look at it.
- 48- This bag is very heavy. I'm not strong (**so – such – enough – too**) to lift it!
- 49- This is (**so – such – enough – too**) an exciting book that I don't want to stop reading it!
- 50- Such a nice lady (**is she – she is – has she – she has**) that we admire her.
- 51- I don't have (**so – such – enough – too**) money to buy a car.
- 52- It was (**such – such a – so – too**) sour milk that the baby couldn't drink it.
- 53- I spend (**so – such – enough – too**) much money that I can't save any.
- 54- Jimmy and Ken are (**so – such – enough – too**) alike that I can't tell one from another.
- 55- Hawaii has (**so – such – enough – too**) amazing beaches that everyone wants to live there.

- 56- His mistake was (**so – such – enough – too**) an unforgivable one that he was sent to prison.
- 57- They were (**so – such – enough – too**) close to winning that everyone felt disappointed with the loss.
- 58- It was (**so – such – enough – too**) expensive a vacation that I regret it.
- 59- You were (**so – such – enough – too**) rude to her that she won't talk to you again.
- 60- Man is never (**so old – old enough – too old – very old**) to learn.

Exercises on Unit 6

2- Read the following passage and answer the questions:

When people are playing a game, they need to follow the rules. If they don't, the game becomes disorganised and unfair. If a student ignores a rule against talking in class, the other students can't concentrate. Drivers who don't follow traffic laws can cause serious accidents.

Most things we do are governed by rules. These may be unwritten, like the rules of social politeness, or official laws passed by parliament and backed up by the legal system. But all rules and laws have the same purpose - to make it clear what is right or wrong, and what happens if someone breaks the rules. They are designed to ensure fairness, safety and respect for others' rights, and in this way they help us work, play and live together peacefully.

If there were no rules and everyone was free to do whatever **they** wanted, most people would behave selfishly. We need rules to help us get along together and show respect for each other. Most of us are basically honest, and knowing the rules means that we usually try to follow them. One reason we do this is to avoid punishment, but the strongest argument for following the rules is - quite simply - that it makes the world a better place for all of us.

A) Choose the correct answer:

- 1- In class, a student should not the rules.
 a) ignore b) govern c) control d) follow
- 2- Following the rules means that we
 a) get punished b) avoid punishment c) cause accidents d) behave selfishly
- 3- The writer thinks that are honest.
 a) all of us b) none of us c) the majority of us d) the minority of us
- 4- The underlined pronoun "they" refers to
 a) rules b) everyone c) rights d) laws
- 5- Breaking rules and laws makes the world a place to live in.
 a) better b) suitable c) beautiful d) worse
- 6- Most things we do are by rules.
 a) lost b) ignored c) spoilt d) controlled

B) Answer the following questions:

- 7- What is the common purpose of all rules and laws?
- 8- What are the types of rules and laws mentioned in the passage?
- 9- When does the game become unfair?
- 10- In one sentence of your own, give your opinion about those who break rules.

4) Finish the following dialogue:

Warda is telling Samia about some work.

Warda : I've been asked to write an article for a website.

Samia : 1) What's it about?

Warda : It's about recycling.

Samia : 2)?

Warda : I chose recycling because I think it's an important subject.

Samia : What is going to be in the article?

Warda : Well, it's a bit difficult to explain.

Samia : 3)?

Warda : Yes, to summarise, the article will be about how people can recycle more.

Samia : 4)?

Warda : For two reasons. Firstly, I sent them the idea for the article last week and they liked it 5)

Samia : When did you write for them before?

Warda : I wrote an article last year. 6)

Samia Well, I'm looking forward to reading it!

5- Write a paragraph of about 120 words about one of the following :

- 1- "How can we help to protect and improve the environment"
- 2- Tourism

9- A) Translate into Arabic:

- 1- Modern societies need enormous amounts of power for heating, lighting and industry.
- 2- Most of this power comes from coal and oil. Experts say that this type of fuel will soon be used up.
- 3- The problem with freelance work is that you don't always get regular work.
- 4- It is important for people to separate their work from their home life.

B Translate ONE (1) sentence only into English:

- 1- لحسن الحظ، كانت المشكلة سهلة جدا علي أخي ليحلها.
- 2- سوف تتمتع المدارس بكافة الوسائل التعليمية والتكنولوجيا الحديثة.
- 3- إن العمل الجماعي يقوي الروابط والقيم الإنسانية بين الناس.
- 2- لا بد أن نشجع الاستثمارات الأجنبية في مصر من أجل تحسين الاقتصاد القومي.

Unit 7: Reach for the Stars

Key Vocabulary

giant	ضخم / عملاق	gravity	جاذبية / خطورة
launch	ينطلق / يطلق / اطلاق	weightless	عديم الوزن
leak	رشح / تسرب / يتسرب	weightlessness	انعدام الوزن
examine	يفحص / يكشف على	side effects	آثار جانبية
mission	مهمة / بعثة / مأمورية	spin - spun - spun	يدور (حول نفسه)
anniversary	ذكرى سنوية	distance	مسافة / بعد
representative	مندوب / ممثل	space tourism	سياحة الفضاء
system (systematic)	نظام (منظم)	hopeful	مفعم بالأمل
secret (secretive)	سر / سرى (كتوم)	horrible	فظيع / مريب

Vocabulary

location	موقع	orbit	يدور حول (شيء) / مدار - فلك
astronaut	رائد فضاء	zero gravity	انعدام الجاذبية
repair	يُصلح / يرمم / إصلاح / ترميم	available	متاح / متوافر
space walk	تمشية في الفضاء	float	يطفو
space station	محطة فضاء	special areas	مجالات خاصة
spaceship / spacecraft	سفينة فضاء	weightless sports	رياضة انعدام الوزن
space exploration	استكشاف الفضاء	arrange	يرتب
amazing feeling	شعور مذهل	control system	نظام التحكم
equipment (is)	معدات / أجهزة	predict	يتنبأ بـ
replace	يستبدل / يحل محل	frightening	مخيف
damage	دمر / دمار	physical exercises	تمارين بدنية
benefit	يُفيد / يستفيد / فائدة	perform / carry out	يؤدي / ينجز
improve	يحسن / يتحسن	decrease / reduce	يقلل
fuel pump	مضخة الوقود	climate change	تغير المناخ
cost / costly	يكلف / تكلفة - مكلف	sources	مصادر
sat-nav	الملاحة الفضائية	blood cells	خلايا الدم
password	كلمة سر	immune system	جهاز المناعة
serious	جاد / خطير	surgery	جراحة / عيادة
interview	يستضيف	transport	النقل / المواصلات / ينقل
satellite	قمر صناعي	properly	كما ينبغي
security	الأمن	nausea	غثيان - دوار
communications	اتصالات	vomiting	التقيؤ
air conditioning / er	تكييف الهواء	dizziness	دوخة
tap / rocket	صنوبر / صاروخ	headache	صداع

Prepositions & Expressions

on a radio programme	في برنامج إذاعي	a waste of time / money	مضيعة لـ
There's a problem with	هناك مشكلة في	at a height of	علي ارتفاع
do space walks	يسير في الفضاء	go for a walk	يخرج للتمشية
do weightless sports	يمارس رياضة	go on a mission	يقوم بمهمة
do repairs	يقوم بأصلاحات	go up x go down	يزداد x ينخفض
make predictions about	يقوم بالتنبؤ عن	know for sure	يعرف بشكل مؤكد
go on a space walk	يقوم بتمشية في الفضاء	walk around	يسير حول / يتجول
have fun with	يستمتع بـ	take turns to	يأخذ دوره لكي
build a space station	يبني محطة فضاء	pass the exam	ينجح في الامتحان
stand still	يقف بدون حركة	solve a problem	يحل مشكلة
not particularly	ليس على وجه الخصوص	first landing on	أول هبوط علي
take off	تقلع (طائرة) / يخلع (ملابس)	send into space	يرسل في الفضاء
connect to	يوصل بـ	think of (about)	يفكر في
a two-hour mission	مهمة لمدة ساعتين	cope with	يتعامل مع / يساير
reach towards	يصل نحو / يقترب من	look down on	ينظر لأسفل علي
reach for / out	يمد ذراعه محاولاً	talk about	يتحدث عن
out of / beyond reach	بعيد المنال	a treatment / cure for	علاج لـ
depend on / get back	يعتمد علي / يعود	plan for	يخطط لـ

Antonyms

secret	سري	known	معروف
repair	يصلح	destroy	يدمر
well-trained	مدرب جيداً	badly trained	ذات تدريب سيئ
giant	عملاق	tiny	صغير جداً
hopeful	مفعم بالأمل	hopeless	يائس / بائس
powerful	قوي	powerless	ضعيف / عاجز
fearful	مخيف	fearless	ليس لديه أي خوف

Derivatives

Verb فعل	Noun اسم	Adjective صفة
explore يستكشف	exploration استكشاف	exploratory استكشافي
weigh يزن	weight وزن	weightless منعدم الوزن
fear يخيف / يخشى	fear خوف / رهبة	fearful مخيف
benefit يفيد / يستفيد	benefit فائدة	beneficial مفيد
treat يعالج / يعامل	treatment علاج / معاملة	treatable يمكن علاجه
leak يتسرب	leak / leakage تسرب	leaky به تسرب

Words go together

launch a campaign	يشن حملة	highly beneficial	مفيد للغاية
reveal a secret	يكشف عن أو يُفشي سر	a diplomatic mission	مهمة دبلوماسية
launch a product	يطرح منتجاً بالأسواق	a political system	نظام سياسي
space agency	وكالة فضاء	e-learning	التعلم الإلكتروني
solar system	المجموعة الشمسية	deterioration	تدهور
as planned	كما هو مخطط له	improve living conditions	يُحسن ظروفه

Read the following carefully

Listening

Interviewer: Thank you for **coming into** the studio this morning. Could you start **by telling** the listeners what you're doing this week?

Astronaut : Well, this is a very **special week** for me. Tomorrow afternoon, **I'm being taken** with two other astronauts to a secret location. The spaceship launches at 7.50 the next evening.

Interviewer: How exciting! How long does it take to **reach the Space Station**?

Astronaut : **It takes about** six hours. I'm really **looking forward to it**.

Interviewer: What is your **mission**, exactly?

Astronaut : There are two or three little things that **need to be looked at on** the International Space Station, but the main problem is the **temperature control system**. We think **there may be a leak** of some kind.

Interviewer : Is that a problem?

Astronaut : We don't think so. We think it **will be repaired quite quickly**.

Interviewer: Is that a difficult job?

Astronaut : No, **not particularly**, but we'll almost certainly need to **spend** some time **working** outside.

Interviewer: Do you mean a spacewalk?

Astronaut : Yes, maybe, but we **won't know for sure until** we're there. Then **all the equipment will be examined**.

Interviewer: Isn't that really dangerous?

Astronaut : Not really. **We're given** a lot of training. **We're told** exactly what to do in these situations **when we will be** weightless in space.

Interviewer: How long will you be in space for?

Astronaut : **We'll probably** be there for about five or six days. It **depends on how serious the problems are**.

Interviewer: I'm sure **you'll be interviewed** by a lot of journalists after your mission, but **we'd love to talk** to you again **when you get back!**

Astronaut : I'd be happy to.

Interviewer: Thank you.

Reading:

Space Holidays

20 July 2019 is the 50th anniversary of a man first walking on the moon. Now, a representative for the World Tourism Organisation predicts that, in the next ten years, people will be taken into space for their holidays. They will be flown in a spaceship to a space station which will orbit the Earth at a height of 320 kilometres – that is about the same as the distance from Cairo to El-Minya. The space station itself will be like a giant spinning wheel that looks like a bike wheel. There will be two special areas: one with gravity like earth and one with zero gravity for weightless sports.

Some people who are interested in space holidays are worried that, as space tourists, they will suffer from the same horrible side effects as astronauts have suffered from, but experts are hopeful that there will be treatments for most side effects.

Just think about such a holiday in space! Everyone who has travelled in space has described the amazing feeling of looking down on the Earth as it spins below you. It will be impossible to go shopping or go for a walk, but think of the fun you can have with weightless football or weightless basketball.

For most people, the main disadvantage is the cost of space holidays. At the moment, the cost of a holiday is very high. But, like everything else, the more people want to do something, the cheaper it will become. So, if you are interested, start saving now!

Definitions

distance	the amount of space between two places		
anniversary	a date which is remembered because something important happened		
gravity	what makes objects fall to the ground		
representative	someone who is chosen to do things, speak etc..... for someone else.		
spin	to turn around and around very quickly		
hopeful	to think that something good will probably happen		
tourism	the business of providing tourists with places to stay, things to do etc...		
mission	an important job that someone has been given to do		
system	an organized way of doing something		
leak	a small hole that liquid or gas gets out through		
side effect	an unexpected result of an activity, situation or event		
secret	known about by only a few people		
giant	very big	horrible	very bad or unkind

Language Notes

- لاحظ استخدام المقطع (ful) بمعنى full of والمقطع (less) بمعنى (without) :

Hopeful – hopeless / helpful – helpless / fruitful – fruitless / harmful – harmless / useful – useless / careful – careless / fearful – fearless / powerful – powerless / painful – painless / tasteful – tasteless / homeless / endless / valueless / priceless

- لاحظ أن الفعل reach متعدى و له معانى مختلفة طبقا لنص الجملة المستخدم فيها :

Temperatures in the desert can reach 50°C	get to a particular level
The baby is reaching towards the vase.	move your hand to touch something
It takes six hours to reach the Space Station.	arrive at a place
That ladder can reach the top of the wall	be long enough to get to a place
Let me reach him to ask about the party.	contact by telephone
This show reaches thousands of teenagers.	be seen by

explore	يستكشف (مكان / احتمالات)
invent	يخترع (شئ لم يكن له وجود من قبل)
discover	يكتشف (شئ كان موجودا من قبل و لكنه كان مجهولا)

Ex: The best way to **explore** the countryside is on foot.

The artificial satellite was **invented** in 1957.

Christopher Columbus **discovered** America.

arrive (لا يليه مفعول به) يصل	arrive at (مكان صغير محدود) يصل إلى
arrive in	يصل إلى (دولة / عاصمة / مدينة كبيرة)
reach	يصل إلى (يليه مفعول به) و لا تأخذ حرف جر

Ex: The plane has just **arrived**. The plane **arrived at** Cairo Airport on time.

The plane **arrived in** Cairo on time. I won't **reach** the office till noon today.

spend + v. + ing + مدة زمنية	يقضى فى
spend money on + ing	ينفق المال على اسم أو فعل ينتهى بـ

Ex: She **spent** the evening **writing** invitations to her friends.

She **spent** a lot of money **on** her new clothes.

reason for	سبب / مبرر (يليها اسم أو فعل ينتهى بـ ing)
reason why	سبب / مبرر (يليها جملة تتكون من فاعل و فعل)
cause (v) يسبب	cause of (يليها اسم)

Ex: I don't know the **reason for** his failure.

I don't know the **reason why** he failed.

What **caused** the fire?

What was the **cause of** the fire?

thank for	يشكر على (يليها اسم أو فعل ينتهى بـ ing)
-----------	--

Ex: Thank you **for** your help. / Thank you **for** helping me.

by بواسطة (يليهما فعل ينتهي بـ ing)

Ex: Mr Yacoub lost weight **by taking** more exercise

look forward to يتطلع الى (يليهما اسم أو فعل ينتهي بـ ing) أو ضمير

Ex: I'm looking forward to my next summer holiday.

I'm looking forward to **visiting** my relatives in Giza.

such a / an + اسم مفرد + صفة جدا

Ex: It was such an exciting film.

start / begin + v. + ing / to + مصدر لكن في الاستمرار نستخدم (المصدر + to) فقط

Ex: It has **started** raining. It has **started to** rain. It's **starting to** rain.

a two-hour mission مهمة لمدة ساعتين

- لاحظ أن two-hour عبارة عن صفة مركبة و الصفة لا تجمع و لذلك لم نجعل كلمة hour

enjoy + v. + ing يستمتع بـ

Ex: I **enjoy meeting** new people.

The + صيغة مقارنة, the + صيغة مقارنة كلما كلما

تستخدم عندما نريد أن نقول أن هناك شيئاً يعتمد على شيء آخر

Ex: The more people want to do something, **the cheaper** it will become.

help + مصدر / مصدر + to + مفعول help + اسم + with + مفعول

Ex: The loan from the bank **helped** her (to) **start** her new business.

His father **helped** him **with** the costs of buying a new flat.

Everyone / everybody / someone / somebody / no one / nobody

لاحظ استخدام فعل مفرد مع هذه الكلمات ولكن تشير إليها بضمير جمع وتأخذ **else** بمعنى آخر:

Ex: **Everyone else** benefits from space technology in **their** everyday lives.

Spot the Difference

location	موقع / موضع / مكان	destination	الجهة المقصودة (للسفر)
site	موقع أثري / بناء / انترنت	sight	الإبصار / الرؤية
repair	يصلح (شيء به تلف أو عطل)	reform	يعدل / يصلح نظام
affect	يؤثر على (بدون حرف جر)	effect	تأثير (تأخذ on)
anniversary	ذكرى سنوية	centenary	ذكرى مئوية
memory	ذاكرة / ذكرى	souvenir	هدية تذكارية
astronomer	عالم فلك	astrologer	منجم / عراف
orbit	يدور حول شيء (بدون حرف جر)	spin	يدور (بدون مفعول) / يلف شيء
cost	تكلفة / يكلف	coast	ساحل
launch	يطلق / يطلق	lunch	وجبة الغداء
leak	يسرب / تسرب	lake	بحيرة
special	خاص (مميز عن غيره)	private	خاص (ملك شخص أو أشخاص)

Language Functions

Agreeing with an opinion الموافقة على رأى ما	Disagreeing with an opinion عدم الموافقة على رأى ما
I completely agree. أوافق تماما	I completely disagree. لا أوافق تماما
I couldn't agree more. أوافق تماما	I don't agree. لا أوافق
Yes, you're quite right. أنت على حق	I'm not so sure. لست متأكدا جدا
I'd go along with that. أوافق على ذلك	That's just not true. هذا غير حقيقى تماما
That's true. هذا حقيقى	I don't think so. لا أعتقد ذلك

Choose the correct answer :

- 1- The car stopped because there was (**a leak – a lake – luck – lack**) in the petrol tank.
- 2- Our air conditioning has broken down, but someone is coming to (**repair – fax – reform – amend**) it tomorrow.
- 3- The doctor (**test – exam – examined – check**) me carefully before he gave me the medicine.
- 4- Computer passwords should always be (**mystery – sacred – secret – scared**). You should never tell anyone.
- 5- The astronauts went on a two-hour (**space – space walk – space station – spaceman**) to replace a broken part.
- 6- Some drivers have a sat-nav (**style – regime – system – discipline**) in their cars to help them find directions.
- 7- The rocket is going to reach the moon on Tuesday. Everyone has watched the (**launch – start – beginning – set up**) on TV.
- 8- Space (**fusions – miseries – professions – missions**) can take several years.
- 9- It took them nearly an hour to (**get – arrive – be – reach**) the top of the mountain.
- 10- This phone doesn't work. It is completely (**useful – use – used – useless**).
- 11- The moon has less (**gravity – grave – gravitate – grove**) than the earth, so you could jump much higher there.
- 12- Today is the 50th (**event – anniversary – date – day**) of when my grandparents were married!
- 13- (**Tourist – Terrorism – Tourism – Terrorists**) is very important for Egypt, so we should always welcome visitors.
- 14- The (**distance – time – difference – hindrance**) between Cairo and London is 3, 5000 kilometers.
- 15- When you are (**countless – weightless – harmless – endless**) in space, it must be very difficult to stand still.

- 16- Some basketball players can (**orbit – spin – spun – mix**) the ball on one finger!
- 17- Ahmed worked really hard for the exam. We are (**hope – hopeless – hopeful – hope**) that he has done very well.
- 18- I told my little brother not to worry, as when the dentist looks at your teeth, it is (**pain – painful – painless – pains**).
- 19- My grandfather was ill, but the doctor gave him some (**powerful – power – powerless – powder**) medicine and now he's better.
- 20- Tarek isn't frightened of anything. He is (**afraid – fearful – fearless – fear**).
- 21- My phone can do many things. It's really (**useful – useless – using – used**).
- 22- It is very sad that there are many (**homy – homeful – homeness – homeless**) people living in the city.
- 23- I don't like this sandwich. It's completely (**tasteful – tasty – tasteless – taste**).
- 24- My tooth hurts. It is really (**painful – painless – pain – painy**).
- 25- The car can go very fast. It is extremely (**powerless – powering – powerful – power**).
- 26- Modern technology has (**proved – improved – proven – improven**) people's lives over the last 50 years.
- 27- Egypt (**reached – arrived – found – had**) the final of the Africa Cup of Nations in 2017.
- 28- (**Memory – Souvenir – Memorial – Anniversary**) is a date that is remembered every year because something important happened.
- 29- (**Hopeful – Horrible – Helpful – Useful**) means very bad or unkind.
- 30- (**Tourism – Favouritism – Memorism – Terrorism**) is the business of providing tourists with places to stay, things to do etc.
- 31- A (**represent – prenter – presentative – representative**) is someone who is chosen to do things, speak etc. for someone else.
- 32- "Distance" means the amount of (**place – time – money – space**) between two places.
- 33- The unexpected results of an activity are called (**side – aside – inside – outside**) effects.
- 34- (**Gravity – Ability – Activity – Capacity**) is what makes objects fall to the ground.
- 35- Astronauts usually work in (**weightless – useless – hopeless – meaningless**) conditions.
- 36- To spin is to turn (**around and around – on and off – up and down – forward and backward**).
- 37- (**Astronauts – Accountants – Astrologers – Engineers**) are well trained to do space walks.
- 38- The soldiers' (**condition – confession – confirmation – mission**) was to attack the radio station.

- 39- He started the meeting (**with – in – by – of**) telling us something about his family.
- 40- July 1969 was (**what – where – when – which**) people first landed on the moon.
- 41- **A:** I think computers are indispensable.
B: I couldn't agree (**much – few – more – little**).
- 42- The plans must be kept (**known – regret – secret – open**) from the enemy.
- 43- There were ten (**pilots – astronomers – astronauts – astrologers**) on the spaceship Colombia.
- 44- The crew are planning a (**four hour – four hours – four hour's – four hours'**) space walk to do the necessary repairs on the space station.
- 45- Space (**exploration – explanation – expectation – exemption**) costs a lot of money.
- 46- A lot of scientists are doing experiments to find a (**solution – treatment – deal – reply**) for the swine flu.
- 47- The government has exerted great efforts to (**reply – respond – solve – answer**) the economic problem.
- 48- Give your (**causes – results – effects – reasons**) why you want to travel abroad.
- 49- Astronauts cope (**up – for – by – with**) weightlessness inside a spacecraft.
- 50- Have you ever seen a space ship at its (**lunch – launch – punch – pinch**)?
- 51- Astronauts float in space because they are (**weightless – weight – weighty – weightlessness**).
- 52- Space ships will probably (**orbit – wander – fly – move**) the Earth at a height of 320 kilometres.
- 53- The manager (**tested – looked – examined – glanced**) the report in detail.
- 54- This map shows the exact (**existence – destination – location – generation**) of the project.
- 55- If your car breaks (**out – into – through – down**) you can use the mobile phone to get help.
- 56- Ali has just (**crossed – passed – succeeded – overcame**) his driving test.
- 57- Pollution is the (**reason – cause – result – effect**) of many dangerous diseases.
- 58- The plane (**reaches – arrives – goes – gets**) in Aswan by 3 o'clock this afternoon.
- 59- I asked the garage to (**make – do – get – have**) repairs to the brakes on my car.
- 60- Space tourists will be able to practice (**weighting – weight – weightless – weighty**) sports.
- 61- The doctor advised me not to take this medicine as it has nasty side (**affects – effects – affection – effective**).

- 62- This airline flies to many (**goals – aims – destinations – positions**) around the world.
- 63- I think there's a problem (**of – at – for – with**) my internet connection.
- 64- Some people have benefited more (**for – by – from – with**) this TV programme than others.
- 65- It's still not possible to accurately (**predict – protect – prevent – protest**) when earthquakes take place.
- 66- I don't think that you understand the (**serious – dangerous – gravity – seriously**) of the situation.
- 67- The manager tried hard to (**improve – repair – fix – prove**) conditions for factory workers.
- 68- The more people want to do something, the (**cheap – cheaper – cheapest – expensive**) it will become.
- 69- Everyone knows who stole it, but (**he – they – you – she**) are all afraid to tell anyone.
- 70- It's for (**gravity – zero gravity – weightless – overweight**) that astronauts float in space.
- 71- The prisoner escaped through a (**sacred – scared – secret – secretive**) passage underneath the building.
- 72- Under our education (**order – discipline – system – arrangement**), you can choose the type of schooling that your child receives.
- 73- I'm looking forward to (**spending – spent – spend – spending**) my holiday in Greece.
- 74- The game took me three hours. It's (**waste – a waste – wasting – wasted**) of time.
- 75- We need to (**reform – repair – prove – perform**) our educational system.

Language Focus

Passive Forms : Present, Future and Infinitive

- نستخدم صيغة المبني للمجهول عندما يكون الحدث أهم من فاعله :

- The International Space Station **is seen** in the sky every night.

(It isn't important who sees it.)

- يتكون المجهول من V.To.Be في نفس زمن الفعل المعلوم ثم التصريف الثالث للفعل الأساسي، ولذلك يصبح الشكل العام لأي جملة passive كالتالي :

(فاعل الجملة + by) + P.P + في زمن الجملة (Be) + مفعول

- I think the new park **will be used by** all the children in the area.

- يمكننا الاستغناء عن آخر عنصرين في جملة ال passive وهما (by والفاعل) .

- وهذا جدول ببعض حالات المعلوم والمجهول :

مضارع بسيط am / is / are + PP. speak / speaks is / are spoken	We always take the bottles for recycling. = The bottles are always taken for recycling.
مضارع مستمر am / is / are + being + PP. is / are repairing is / are being repaired	The chef is preparing lunch now. = Lunch is being prepared now.
مستقبل بسيط will be + PP. will tell will be told	The teacher will mark the exam tomorrow. = The exam will be marked tomorrow.
الأفعال الناقصة can / could / shall / should / may / might / ought to / must / need to / seem to / have to / used to / be to / be going to ...+ (be + PP.) used to clean used to be cleaned	- We could see many tourists in the pool. = Many tourists could be seen in the pool. - The government is going to build a new road. = A new road is going to be built .

ملاحظات (مراجعة على القديم)

كـ لاحظ النفي في المضارع البسيط :

- The police **don't allow** big cars into the city centre. (active)
- Big cars **aren't allowed** into the city centre. (passive)

كـ لا تستخدم let كتصريف ثالث في المجهول و لكن نستخدم **allowed to** :

- He **let me** go. (I was let go) X - (I was **allowed to** go.)

كـ لاحظ أن الفعل **have** لا يستخدم كتصريف ثالث في المبني للمجهول :

- She **had** an exam yesterday. = An exam **was taken** yesterday.

كـ يمكن أن نستخدم الفعل **Get** بدلا من **Be** خاصة مع التصريف الثالث من الأفعال الآتية :

catch - arrest - damage - destroy - kill - marry - burn - beat

- The bank robbers **got / were caught**.

كـ الأفعال **make / see / hear / watch** يليها مفعول ثم مصدر و لكن في المجهول يليها **to** ثم المصدر :

- He **saw** them go out. - They **were seen to** go out.

كـ في حالة الأفعال المتبوعة بـ (to + inf.) نستخدم (to be + p.p.) في المجهول :

- I want **you to tell** me the truth. - I want **to be told** the truth.

كـ في حالة الأفعال المتبوعة بـ (v.+ ing) نستخدم (being + p.p.) في المجهول :

- I **hate** people **telling** me lies. - I **hate** **being told** lies.

كـ إذا جاء بعد **let** مفعول نختار بعده مصدر ولكن إذا جاء بعدها ضمير منعكس نختار بعده **be + P.P** :

- He **doesn't let** others **laugh** at him. - He **doesn't let** himself **be laughed** at.

هناك أفعال لا يأتي بعدها مفعول لذلك لا تُبنى للمجهول أبداً (الأفعال اللازمة) مثل :

collapse ينهار / fall / excel يتفوق / survive / come / exist / appear / disappear / disapprove يرفض / disagree / go / occur / seem / vanish يتلاشى / take place

هناك أفعال تستخدم معلوم ومجهول حسب المعنى : **open / begin / break / change** :

- This shop opens (is opened) at eight o'clock everyday.

الأفعال المتعدية لمفعول أو اثنين تبنى للمجهول اذا لم يأتي بعدها المفعول أو المفعولين :

- I **was invited** to Ali's birthday party. - I **was sent** a new e-mail last night.

مع الأفعال المتعدية اذا بدأت الجملة بالمفعول غير العاقل نستخدم **to / for** قبل العاقل :

- A new e-mail **was sent to me** last night.

نستخدم **to** مع : give / bring / lend / offer / pass / read / sell / show / write / teach

نستخدم **for** مع : buy / build / find / order / make / leave / save / get / keep

الأفعال الآتية يأتي بعدها مفعول في المعلوم ولكنها لا تستخدم في المجهول :

become / suit / fit / look like / seem / lack / equal

- He is going to **become** a doctor. - This shirt **fits** me well.

تُستخدم **by** عند ذكر الفاعل الذي قام بالحدث ولكن تستخدم **with** عند ذكر الوسيلة :

- Rassendyll was stabbed **with** a knife **in** his shoulder **by** Rupert Hentzau..

لا بد من استخدام الفاعل + **by** مع أفعال معينة مثل :

build / invent / discover / design / write / damage / compose / destroy

- The radio **was invented** by Marconi.

لاحظ أن الجملة في المبنى للمجهول قد تكون مثبتة أو منفية حسب المعنى :

- I didn't attend Sara's wedding because I wasn't invited.

Choose the correct answer:

- 1- English (**speaks – is speaking – is spoken – spoken**) everywhere.
- 2- Is the exercise (**done – being done – does – doing**) now?
- 3- I think fewer letters (**will write – will have write – will written – will be written**) in the future.
- 4- School rules have (**to be followed – to being followed – be followed – to follow**).
- 5- Could your maths problem (**solve – solving – be solving – be solved**)?
- 6- The children (**take – are been taken – took – are being taken**) to the park today.
- 7- There is a hole in the roof, which needs (**be looking – look – to be looked – be looked**) at.
- 8- Your homework (**will be – will have – will – is going to**) marked tomorrow.
- 9- All the students (**are giving – given – are given – are being giving**) a lot of training before they sail the boats.
- 10- A lot of bread (**was baking – baking – is being baked – is baking**) at the baker's today.

- 11- The TV program about space (**is shown – shown – showed – is being shown**) at the moment.
- 12- He (**will tell – tells – will be told – is been told**) to park the car when he gets there.
- 13- The amount of energy that we use every year must (**be reduced – reduced – have reduced – been reduced**).
- 14- More electric cars (**are selling – are selled – are being sold – sold**) than last year.
- 15- Meat should (**have cooked – be cooking – be cooked – cook**) well before you eat it.
- 16- Those toys (**sell – are selling – are sold – sold**) in many shops near here.
- 17- The animals (**feed – fed – are feeding – are fed**) by the farmers every morning.
- 18- The windows are going (**to clean – be cleaned – to cleaned – to be cleaned**) today.
- 19- When you arrive at the hotel, you will (**be shown – show – being shown – shown**) to your room.
- 20- Many new ways of saving energy (**develop – are developing – are developed – are being developed**) by scientists at the moment.
- 21- I've seen the plans. Two new hotels (**is going to build - is going to be built - are going to build - are going to be built**) near the beach next year.
- 22- Don't put those old batteries in the bin . They should (**take – be took – be taking – be taken**) to a special place.
- 23- What can (**be seen – saw – will see – been seen**) from your classroom window?
- 24- Are any new buildings going to (**build – will build - be built – are built**) in your area?
- 25- Which rules must (**be – to be – have – being**) followed at your school and at home?
- 26- What could (**be done – do – did – been done**) in your area to make it safer for young children?
- 27- I (**am being taken – am taking – am been taken – take**) with two other astronauts to a secret location.
- 28- There are two or three little things that need (**be – to being – been – to be**) looked at.
- 29- We (**are told – telling – are been told – will told**) exactly what to do in these situations.
- 30- I'm sure you'll (**interview – been interviewed – interviewed – be interviewed**) by a lot of journalists after your mission
- 31- A lot of things (**always learn – always are learnt – are always learnt – are learnt always**) from space missions.

- 32- A new space station (**will probably build – will probably built – probably will build – will probably be built**) in the future.
- 33- The hotel rooms (**will decorate – will be decorated – will decorated – will have decorated**) next month.
- 34- The internet (**is using – is been used – is being used – is used**) everywhere.
- 35- My car needs (**repaired – to repairing – to be repaired – to repair**).
- 36- Let's hurry; the plane is going (**to take – take – be taken – to took**) off.
- 37- A lot of fast food (**is sold – is being sold – sold – sell**) every day.
- 38- Houses (**design – have designed – are designed – are designing**) to be warm in winter.
- 39- The school has to (**built – be built – have been built – builds**) before the school year starts.
- 40- The car (**drives – is driving – is being driven – will drive**) too fast.
- 41- Houses (**collapse – are collapsed – were collapsed – collapsing**) in earthquakes.
- 42- I expect we (**will be told – will tell – have told – had told**) where to go.
- 43- Charles Dickens (**writes – is written – was written – wrote**) Oliver twist a long time ago.
- 44- Roads should (**be building – built – be built – have been built**) across the desert .
- 45- Some of her stories (**base – is based – are based – are basing**) on her travels.
- 46- Hala's cousin (**is going to be taken – will take – is going to take – will be taking**) to the station so he can take the train to Alexandria.
- 47- Drive carefully here because the road (**was repaired – is repairing – is being repaired – is repaired**).
- 48- Around six hours a day (**spent – are spend – are spending – are spent**) checking emails.
- 49- The new building will be used (**to – with – at – by**) young children who do not go to school yet.
- 50-That old hotel (**could use – could be using – could be used – could have used**) as a museum in the future.
- 51- The Cairo Metro (**used – is using – is used – was using**) by about two million passengers everyday.
- 52- English and Arabic (**are spoken – is spoken – are speaking – is speaking**) in most tourist offices.
- 53- We can't possibly allow the antiques (**to sell – to be sold – to be selling – to being**) abroad.
- 54- In Japan, buildings (**have construct – are constructing – are constructed – had constructed**) to withstand earthquakes.

- 55- The Cairo Metro may (**be extended – be extent – be extending – have extended**) from Imbaba to the Cairo airport.
- 56- A box of chocolates was given (**at – for – to – with**) Amanda.
- 57- I don't mind (**being helped – helping – being helping – am helped**) by people.
- 58- Don't let yourself (**be deceived – be deceiving – deceive – to deceive**) by others.
- 59- The law must never (**break – broken – be breaking – be broken**).
- 60- A prize will be given (**him – to him – for him – he**) by the teacher.
- 61- I remember (**giving – being given – gave – being giving**) a lot of advice by my father.
- 62- The bank robbers will (**get caught – got caught – get catch – catch**) by the police.
- 63- Who are going to (**invited – be invite – be invited – have invite**) to your wedding party?
- 64- Some trees (**are fallen – fallen – fall – are falling**) down during storms.
- 65- Rainforests (**grow – grew – is grown – are grown**) in areas that have a lot of rain.
- 66- Japanese will (**be speaking – speak – be spoken – have spoken**) at the next meeting.
- 67- The Japanese will (**be speaking – speak – be spoken – have spoken**) at the next meeting.
- 68- Care should (**take – be taking – be taken – taking**) while working on electrical equipment.
- 69- People mustn't (**left – leave – be left – leaving**) bicycles in the driveway.
- 70- They are going to (**build – have built – be built – building**) a new factory in Portland.
- 71- The bedrooms have (**cleaned – to clean – be cleaned – to be cleaned**).
- 72- The company might (**hire - be hired – to hire – hired**) ten new employees.
- 73- He will (**give – gave – been given – be given**) a prize by the teacher.
- 74- At the moment, money is (**collected – being collected – being collecting – collecting**) for children in need.
- 75- He doesn't let himself (**be cheated – cheat – to be cheated – to cheat**) by others.
- 76- I hate (**telling – tell – being telling – being told**) what to do.
- 77- All the information you need (**can find – can be found – found – can found**) on the internet.
- 78- The hospital will (**situate – situation – be situated – situated**) by the river.
- 79- The babies (**feed – fed – are fed – are feeding**) on milk.
- 80- We can't get on the plane yet because it (**is repairing – is repaired – has been repaired – is being repaired**).

Exercise on Unit 7

2) Read the following passage and answer the questions :

How would you feel about travelling into space for six months to live on a planet that is 400 million kilometres from earth? And how would you feel if you had been told that you could never return? That is what is planned for people who are going on the Mars One mission in 2031. Surprisingly, 200,000 applications have been received from people who want to join the mission, even though they know that they will never see earth again.

The people who want to go to Mars say that their plan is not very different from the first Europeans who went to America, or the thousands of people who have left their countries because of war or disease. They also knew that their new lives would be difficult, and that they would probably never see their countries again.

A hundred people who want to go to Mars have been chosen to start special training to see who is suitable. Scientists will get the people to live in a small living space for a long time, without seeing any friends or family. This will be similar to what they can expect on Mars. The launch will have a crew of just four people for the long journey into space. A special **settlement** will be built on Mars where food will be grown and the four people will live and work. It won't be an easy life: there will be very little water, they will have to grow their own food and the planet is known for its giant dust storms. Despite these problems, for some fearless pioneers, it is a challenge they cannot refuse.

A) Choose the correct answer:

1- How many people will be sent to Mars in 2031?

- a) 200,000 b) 100 c) 4 d) 400

2- Why did the people decide to travel to Mars?

- a) They want to see if they can survive there. b) They don't like earth.
c) Scientists made them go there. d) They want to see the dust storms.

3- What is the main idea of the text?

- a) One day, we will all live on Mars.
b) Life on Mars will be very difficult.
c) The people who go to Mars will be famous.
d) Life on Mars will never be possible.

4- What does the word settlement mean?

- a) a farm b) a place where a group of people live c) a factory d) a rocket

5- What does the underlined it refer to?

- a) an offer to go to Mars b) a six-month journey into space
c) time spent with three other people d) an offer to send in an application

6- How far is Mars from earth?

- a) 400,000,000 kms b) 400,000 kms c) 4,000,000 kms d) 2,000,000 kms

B) Answer the following questions:

- 7- Paraphrase this sentence: "It won't be an easy life:dust storm".
- 8- Do you think that many people will live on Mars in the future? Why/Why not?
- 9- Find a word that means "one of the first people to travel to an unknown place."
- 10- How would you feel if someone told you that you could never return to earth?

4) Finish the following dialogue :

Hazem and Imad are talking about revising.

Hazem: I've heard that you always revise at night. 1).....?

Imad : Yes, that's right.

Hazem: 2).....?

Imad : One advantage is that it is much quieter at night.

Hazem: 3)..... . It is quieter then. 4).....?

Imad : A negative side is that I feel tired the next day.

Hazem: Yes, I'm sure you feel tired. It's harder to remember things at night, isn't it?

Imad : 5)..... . I remember things better then.

Hazem: Well, we all have different ways to revise!

Imad : 6)..... .

5) Write a paragraph of (120) words on ONE of the following :

- 1- A journey into space
- 2- The advantages and disadvantages of artificial intelligence

6) A- Translate into Arabic:

- 1- Scientific research is very important, as it paves the way towards a better life.
- 2- Everyone should play a positive role in developing our country and achieving progress and prosperity.
- 3- Everyone who has traveled into space has described the magical feeling of looking down on the Earth as it spins below you.
- 4- In space, It's impossible to go shopping or go for a walk. However, you can do some exercise.
- 5- In the field of space, it's expected to set up a completely artificially constructed space colony there.

B- Translate into English:

- 1- يستطيع رواد الفضاء ممارسة رياضة انعدام الوزن أثناء مهماتهم في الفضاء.
- 2- لم يعد الفضاء غامضاً بفضل المجهودات العظيمة للعلماء.
- 3- نحن نعيش الان عصر الاتصالات الذي جعل العالم عالماً مفتوحاً.
- 4- يجب أن نستفيد من تجارب الآخرين في الصناعة و التكنولوجيا الحديثة.
- 5- سوف تتحقق في المستقبل القريب سياحة الفضاء التي ستجذب الكثير من الناس.
- 6- يقدم العلماء الجديد كل يوم لخدمة البشرية.

Unit 8 : A Space Odyssey

Key Vocabulary

consultant	مستشار	electrician	كهربائي (شخص)
director	مخرج	politician	سياسي (شخص)
physics	الفيزياء	archaeologist	عالم آثار
radar	الرادار	chemist	صيدلي
technician	فني (شخص)	threaten (-ing)	يهدد (تهديدي)
foundation	مؤسسة	be about to	علي وشك
zero-gravity	أنعدام جاذبية	pressure	ضغط
horrified	مرعوب	emergency	طوارئ
control (s)	يتحكم (مفاتيح التحكم)	emergent	طارئ / عاجل
interrupt	يقاطع	artificial intelligence	ذكاء صناعي

Vocabulary

consult	يستشير	war & peace	الحرب والسلام
consultation	استشارة	publish	ينشر
interruption	مقاطعة في الحديث	publication	نشر / منشور
expert	خبير	popular	شعبي
physicist	فيزيائي (شخص)	electricity	كهرباء
equipment	معدات	electrical	كهربائي
discovery	اكتشاف	politics	السياسة (علم / مجال)
breathe	يتنفس	policy	سياسة (مبدأ / قاعدة)
structure	تركيب / بناء	chemist's / pharmacy	صيدلية
fiction / fictional	خيال / خيالي	planet Saturn	كوكب زحل
found / founder	يؤسس / مؤسس	astronaut	رائد فضاء
direct	يوجه	press	يضغط
objects	أشياء	wires	اسلاك
practical	عملي	common	شائع
radio waves	موجات لاسلكية	survive	يبقى حياً / ينجو من
technical	فني / تقني (صفة)	human	بشري
wheelchair	كرسي متحرك	satellite	قمر صناعي
Space odyssey	ملحمة فضائية	explore	يستكشف
horrify	يرعب	forward	للأمام
check / examine	يفحص	extremely	جداً
poison : toxin	سُم	downside	الجانب السلبي
poisonous : toxic	سام	electric car	سيارة كهربائية
measure	يقيس	archaeology	علم الآثار

Prepositions & Expressions

move forward	يتحرك للأمام	ask about	يسأل عن
work with (radar)	يعمل مع / يعمل بـ	(give a) talk about	يتحدث عن
work on a film	يعمل في فيلم	a waste of money	إضاعة للمال
write for magazines	يكتب للمجلات	go wrong	يتعطل
popular with	محبوب من	lose contact with	يفقد الاتصال بـ
make into a film	يحول إلى فيلم	turn off	يطفىء
make a film of ...	يعمل فيلم من ...	in his free time	في وقت فراغه
publish in a	ينشر في (مجلة)	deal with	يتعامل مع
name after	يسمي باسم	continue to	يستمر في فعل
find work	يجد عملاً	send messages to	يرسل رسائل إلى
get a job with	يحصل على وظيفة لدى	on a spaceship	في سفينة فضاء
graduate in (maths)	يتخرج بشهادة في	find nothing wrong with	لا يجد خطأ في
on earth	على وجه الأرض	There's a problem with	هناك مشكلة في
Be in a wheelchair	قعيد / معاق	horrified by / at	مرعوب من
Be remembered as	يتم تذكره كـ	is falling fast	ينخفض بسرعة
work in zero-gravity			يعمل في ظروف انعدام الجاذبية

Antonyms

awake	مستيقظ	asleep	نائم
land	يهبط	take off	تقلع
positive	إيجابي	negative / passive	سلبي
continue	يستمر	stop	يتوقف
scientific	علمي	literary	أدبي
appear	يظهر	disappear	يختفي
natural	طبيعي	artificial	صناعي

Derivatives

Verb		Noun		Adjective	
pressurize	يضغط / يجبر	pressure	الضغط	pressurised	مضغوط
horrify	يرعب	horror	الرعب	horrified	مرعوب
threaten	يهدد	threat	تهديد	threatened	مهَّد
benefit	يفيد / يستفيد	benefit	نفع / فائدة	beneficial	مفيد / نافع
shock	يصدم	shock	صدمة	shocked	مصدوم
predict	يتنبأ	prediction	التنبؤ	predictable	متوقع
improve	يحسِّن	improvement	تطوير	improvable	قابل للتحسن
replace	يستبدل	replacement	بديل	replaceable	يمكن استبداله

Words go together

infrastructure	البنية التحتية	quality of life	طبيعة الحياة
scientific consultant	مستشار علمي	social media	وسائل التواصل الاجتماعي
developed countries	دول متقدمة	emergency exit	مخرج الطوارئ
developing countries	دول نامية	space shuttle	مكوك فضاء
science fiction writer	كاتب خيال علمي	space conquest	غزو الفضاء
editor in chief	رئيس تحرير	pros & cons	مزايا وعيوب

Read the following carefully

Listening

Narrator: Today, I'm going to give a talk about one of the most famous writers of science fiction: Arthur C. Clarke. He was born in England in 1917, the son of a farmer. He was always interested in science, but his father died and his family did not have much money, so Clarke had to find work as soon as he finished school. He got a job with the government, although he wrote for science magazines in his free time. He was able to develop his skills in science during the Second World War, when he worked with radar. This system was being used for the first time, to help planes to land. Many science articles by Clarke had been published in magazines before the war ended. He predicted satellite television in one article. Later, his science fiction stories were also published in magazines.

Clarke decided to go to university after the war and he graduated in maths and physics. He became the editor of a science magazine and continued to write articles and stories. Many of his stories were about people travelling into space in rockets. Soon he was famous as a writer and also as a scientific consultant. Scientists and technicians knew that Clarke could be asked about spaceships and satellites, and he was happy to talk about his ideas.

In 1964, Clarke was asked to work on a film for the famous director Stanley Kubrick. The director wanted to make a film of one of Clarke's short stories. This became 2001: A Space Odyssey. The film, about travelling far into space, has been watched by many millions of people since it was made in 1968.

After a serious illness, Clarke was in a wheelchair for many years and he died in 2008, but he is remembered as a great scientist as well as a writer. The Arthur C Clarke Foundation has promoted the use of technology to improve the quality of life in developing countries, and there are now parts of space that have been named after him.

Reading: Arthur C. Clarke's 2001: A Space Odyssey

Only two men were awake on the spaceship Discovery. Their names were David Bowman and Frank Poole. Their job was to look after the spaceship and

the three other astronauts, who were sleeping during the long journey to the planet Saturn. Bowman and Poole were helped by Hal, an extremely intelligent computer. One morning, Poole was watching a video message that had been sent to him by his family on earth. It was interrupted by Hal, who said that part AE35 of the spaceship was about to fail. Part AE35 was important because it sent messages to earth.

Poole went outside the spaceship to replace the part. He was used to working in zero-gravity so he changed the part easily. However, when Bowman checked the old part later, he found nothing wrong. That afternoon, Hal told them that the new part AE35 was also about to fail. The men weren't used to hearing that there were problems with the spaceship and they thought that this was strange, so they contacted earth. They were told that something was wrong with Hal and that they should turn the computer off. Suddenly, they lost contact with earth. Part AE35 was not working.

Poole decided to replace the new part AE35, but while he was outside, the spaceship suddenly moved forward and hit him. He was killed. Bowman was horrified and wondered if Poole was killed by Hal. He decided to wake up the other astronauts, but to do this, he needed Hal's help. At first, Hal refused, but when Bowman threatened to cut Hal's wires, the computer finally agreed.

Bowman started to wake up the other astronauts, but suddenly he felt the inside of the spaceship become very cold. The pressure inside the spaceship was falling fast and all the air was disappearing. Bowman ran to an emergency room so he could breathe some oxygen. He now understood that the computer that had been built to help him was trying to kill him. He had to find Hal's controls so that he could turn off the computer.

Definitions

consultant	an expert in a subject whose job is to give advice about it		
director	someone who decides how a play, film etc. should be made		
physics	the science that deals with the structure of objects		
radar	equipment that finds the position of things using radio waves		
technician	someone who does practical work in science or technology		
foundation	an organization / a basic idea belief that something is based on		
interrupt	to stop someone while they are speaking or doing something		
is about to	to be ready to start doing something		
threaten	to tell someone you will hurt them if they don't do what you want		
pressure	the force a gas or liquid has when it's inside a container or a place		
emergency	unexpected or dangerous situation that must be dealt immediately		
control	one of the parts of a machine that you use to make it work		
zero gravity	there is no gravity	horrified	shocked and afraid too much

Language Notes

- العديد من كلمات الوظائف تنتهي بـ (ian) أو (ist) مثل :
 technician / scientist/ electrician / chemist / politician / physician (طبيب باطنة)

- الظرف (about) له معاني مختلفة مثل :

There were about 100 people in the theatre.	حوالي a little more or less than
I was about to go out when my friend arrived.	ready to start doing something
Breakfast is just about ready.	تقريباً almost
There's a message for Ahmed. Is he about ?	قريب - مجاور nearby

- **fail** failed failed يتوقف - يتعطل The machine failed around four pm.
- **fail** failed failed يفشل - The plan failed because they ran out of money.
- **feel** felt felt يشعر - I'm over the worst of my flu but I still feel a bit weak.
- **fall** fell fallen يسقط - يقع I fell off the ladder yesterday.
- **fall** fell fallen ينخفض - Demand for this product has fallen recently.
- **fill** filled filled يملأ - He filled the bottle with water.

- **found** founded يؤسس - The city of Ashmoun was founded centuries ago.
- **foundation** مؤسسة خيرية - Tim started a foundation for the poor in his city.
- **find** found يجد - I found ten dollars in the street yesterday.

- (be) used to + n. / v-ing = accustomed to + n. / v-ing معتاد علي

- I found living in China very strange at first but I'm **used to** it now.
- I'm **accustomed to driving** on the right.

common	شائع / عام	in common	مشترك
rocket	صاروخ	racket	مضرب
journey	رحلة برية طويلة	trip	رحلة برية قصيرة
voyage	رحلة بحرية / فضائية	flight	رحلة طيران
interrupt	يقاطع فى الكلام / العمل	disturb	يعوق عن العمل / يزعج
plant	نبات	planet	كوكب
occur	يحدث (دون تخطيط)	take place	يحدث (بتخطيط)

Language Functions

Talking about advantages and disadvantages

One negative / positive side is that

A positive / negative side to that is

What is the advantage / disadvantage of that?

What are the pros and cons?

What is the benefit / downside of that?

Choose the correct answer:

- 1- (**Physics – Maths – History – Statistics**) is the science that deals with the structure of objects.
- 2- A (**technical – physician – technician – electrician**) is someone who does practical work in science or technology.
- 3- (**An instrument – Radar – Radio – Radical**) is equipment that finds the position of things using radio waves.
- 4- A (**teacher – scientist – colonel – consultant**) is an expert in a subject whose job is to give advice about it.
- 5- A (**producer – director – manager – principal**) is someone who decides how a play, film etc. should be made.
- 6- We saw a film being made by a famous (**writer – author – director – plumber**) today!
- 7- The company needed help with its advertising so they asked a (**carpenter – dealer – trader – consultant**) to work with them.
- 8- Most planes can land in any type of weather as the pilots can use (**tablet – Radar – mobile – compass**).
- 9- My cousin is a (**surgeon – chemical – technician – dentist**) and works in the laboratory of a big company that makes medicine.
- 10- We learnt how to measure energy in our (**physical – physics – chemistry – biology**) lesson today.
- 11- The (**controls – devices – sets – appliances**) for this computer game don't work. Can I try yours?
- 12- The children were (**glad – happy – horrified – sacrifice**) to find a poisonous snake in their tent.
- 13- The teacher said that we should never (**cut – talk – speak – interrupt**) her while she is talking.
- 14- In (**zero-gravity – gravity – gravitate – grave**), things that are not attached to something start to float around.
- 15- Air (**controls – press – stress – pressure**) is usually high in good weather and low in bad weather.
- 16- The shopkeeper (**threat – threatened – offered – blamed**) to call the police when the man refused to pay.
- 17- Ambulances drive very fast when there is an (**emergency – eminent – awkward – embarrassing**).
- 18- If you like working with electrical goods, you should become an (**technical – physician – technician – electrician**).
- 19- After studying ancient history, Mona became an (**archaeologist – engineer – archaeological – electrician**).
- 20- My brother wants to be a member in the parliament. He will be an outstanding (**political – politics – policy – politician**).

- 21- We want to buy some medicine from the (**shop – baker's – chemist's – grocer's**).
- 22- If there is a fire in the building , you should use an emergency (**exist – existence – exit – ladder**).
- 23- Could you give me the remote (**control – roller – counter – pen**) to change this channel?
- 24- The tiger (**horror – afraid – terror – horrified**) the explorers in the forest.
- 25- On giving a speech, I don't like any (**corruption – interruption – fracture – fiction**).
- 26- As more snow fell, the bottom layer was (**compress – pressure – pressed – compressed**) into ice.
- 27- The house seemed less (**threatening – threatened – threaten – threat**) in the cold light of day
- 28- Arthur C. Clarke is a science (**fictional – factual – fiction – fission**) writer.
- 29- His father was a (**teacher – doctor – farmer – director**). He raised cattle and grew crops.
- 30- Astronauts travel into space by (**planes – jets – radar – spaceships**).
- 31- Arthur C. Clarke helped a director (**to do – to make – to buy – to get**) a film of his stories.
- 32- Do you think you can (**direct – make – directorate – direction**) the project?
- 33- He is specialised in physics. He is a (**physician – physicist – physical – psychologist**).
- 34- If the pain continues, (**consult – result – insult – consultant**) your doctor.
- 35- We offer free (**mechanic – technical – electric – arctic**) support for those buying our software .
- 36- Radar was being used for the first time, to help planes (**landing – lands - to land - landed**).
- 37- Many science fiction (**stories – novels – articles – plays**) by Clarke had been published in magazines .
- 38- (**scientists – doctors – electricians – archaeologists**) and technicians knew that Clarke could be asked about spaceships and satellites
- 39- There are now parts of space that have been named (**of – for – about – after**) him.
- 40- Hal was an extremely intelligent (**radio – TV – computer – Lap**) helping the astronauts.
- 41- Hal said that part AE35 of the spaceship was (**on – nearly – almost – about**) to fail.
- 42- He was used to working in (**minus – plus – subtract – zero**) -gravity so he changed the part easily.
- 43- The astronauts were told that something was wrong (**of – with – on – off**) Hal.

- 44- Suddenly, they lost contact (**of – with – on – to**) earth. Part AE35 was not working.
- 45- When Bowman (**threat – threatened – threatening – to threat**) to cut Hal's wires, the computer finally agreed.
- 46- The (**pressure – compressor – treasure – processor**) inside the spaceship was falling fast and all the air was disappearing.
- 47- Bowman ran to an (**agenda – emergency – agency – urgent**) room so he could breathe some oxygen.
- 48- He had to find Hal's controls so that he could (**take – put – turn – see**) off the computer.
- 49- Do you think that computers could ever (**make – be – let – go**) wrong and try to hurt people?
- 50- One day, space travel will be more (**common – ceremony – contact – continue**). People will work and go for holidays in space
- 51- Although it is not (**really – imaginary – fictional – real**), fiction can give you many ideas which you can use in life.
- 52- The colour of this new car is (**ideal – hopeless – horrible – ordinary**). I don't like it at all.
- 53- It takes many hours for the rocket to (**launch – go – reach – travel**) the Space Station.
- 54- The rocket will be (**launched – taken – kept – led**) into space tomorrow morning.
- 55- You should only phone 123 in a/an (**emotion – emergency – ambulance – situation**).
- 56- I can't talk to you now because I am (**about – off – over – away**) to go out.
- 57- We can't play this computer game because the (**contents – crew – crops – controls**) don't work.
- 58- The money will go to the San Francisco AIDS (**foundation – found – founded – founder**).
- 59- The police do not know the (**challenge – reason – cause – benefit**) of the accident in the street yesterday.
- 60- We need someone who we can (**consultant – consult – advice – revise**) as we don't know the law well .
- 61- Do you think space exploration is a (**lost – waste – losing – miss**) of time and money ?
- 62- When I was driving on the motorway, I was (**about – about to – too – nearly**) make an accident.
- 63- You shouldn't exceed the speed limit because it is photographed by (**radar – TV – police – soldiers**).
- 64- Why did you (**please – terror – horror – horrify**) the children? They were too scared .

Language Focus

Past Passive Forms

- جملة الـ passive هي جملة تبدأ دائماً بمفعول الجملة وتعبّر عن ما يعبر عنه نفس الزمن في الشكل الـ active (المبنى للمعلوم).
- الشكل العام لأي جملة passive يكون كالتالي :
فاعل الجملة + P.P + by + في زمن الجملة (Be) + مفعول
- يمكننا الاستغناء عن آخر عنصرين في جملة الـ passive وهما (by والفاعل).
- إذا كان الفاعل ضمير واردنا كتابته في جملة الـ passive يكتب في شكل ضمير مفعول وكذلك المفعول إذا كان ضمير وسنبداً به الجملة يكتب في شكل ضمير الفاعل.

ماضي بسيط was / were + PP.	- The government built a new school in the village last year. = A new school was built in
invited	was / were invited
ماضي مستمر was / were + being + PP.	- They were decorating my house all day yesterday. = The house was being decorated all day yesterday.
was / were watching	was / were being watched
ماضي تام had been + PP.	- Mother hadn't made the bread before we went to bed. = The bread hadn't been made before we went to bed.
had picked	had been picked
مضارع تام have / has been + PP.	- Actors have used the hotel in many famous films. = The hotel has been used in many famous films.
have / has paid	have / has been paid
الأفعال الناقصة التامة will / should / could / might / must / may / can would + (have + been + PP.)	- By next month, she will have saved some money. = By next month, some money will have been saved.
should have done	should have been done

ملاحظات :

يلاحظ النفي في الماضي البسيط :

- Tom **didn't answer** the exam. (active)
- The exam **wasn't answered** by Tom. (passive)

يلاحظ في حالة وجود ظرف (adv.) يفضل وضعه قبل التصريف الثالث :

- Your work must be **carefully planned**.

Reporting with passive verbs

It is said that

(He) is said to

- تستخدم هذه التعبيرات في المبنى للمجهول عندما تعنى أن الناس عامة يقولون أو يعتقدون أو يزعمون أو..... وذلك إذا كان غير معروف بالتحديد من هو الفاعل وهذه الأفعال هي :

People	say / know / declare / think				
Doctors	/ believe / expect / report /				
Experts +	claim / allege / hope /	+that +	Subj. +	Verb +	Object
Engineers	suppose / understand /				
Someone	expect / announce				

- يتم حذف { People / Someone } ثم :

* إما نبدأ بـ (It) ونحول الفعل بعدها للمبنى للمجهول ثم نكمل باقي الجملة :

Ex. People **say** that she is a widow as she is always in black. **(بين فاعلين)**

It is said that she is a widow as she is always in black. **(بعد It)**

* أو نبدأ بالفاعل بعد (that) : ثم نحول الفعل بعد (People) للمبنى للمجهول ثم (to) ثم مصدر الفعل بعد (that) وذلك إذا كان الفعل في زمن المضارع البسيط أو المستقبل , ثم نكمل الجملة :

Ex. **She is said to be** a widow as she is always in black. **(بدأ بالفاعل الثاني)**

- أما إذا كان الفعل بعد (that) ماضي أو مضارع تام نكتب (to have) ثم التصريف الثالث :

Ex. They **alleged** that he **killed** his wife. **المعنى مضارع / مستقبل مصدر to +**

He **was alleged to have killed** his wife. **المعنى ماضى to + have + P.P**

Ex. Newspapers reported that all the passengers **were killed** in the crash.

All the passengers were reported **to have been killed** in the crash.

Choose the correct answer :

- 1- Radar (**used – was using – was being used – has used**) for the first time, to help planes to land.
- 2- Many science articles by Clarke (**had – has been – had been – have been**) published in magazines before the war ended.
- 3- His science fiction stories (**also published – were also published – were also publishing – are also publishing**) in magazines.
- 4- Scientists and technicians knew that Clarke (**could – to be – could be – had being**) asked about spaceships and satellites.
- 5- Clarke (**ask – has asking – had ask – was asked**) to work on a film for the famous director Stanley Kubrick.
- 6- The film (**has been – was – had been – have been**) watched by many millions of people since it was made in 1968.
- 7- There are now parts of space that have (**been naming – be named – been named – named**) after him.
- 8- By last summer, the new factory (**had built – had been built – was built – built**).
- 9- My mobile (**loses – had lost – lost – was lost**) in the sports club yesterday.

- 10- When Father returned home, his dinner (**was being made - was making - had made - made**).
- 11- I had waited at the garage until my car (**repaired - was repwiring - was repaired - was being repaired**).
- 12- A rocket (**first sent - was first sent - had first sent - first sends**) into space in 1944.
- 13- Photographs of the dark side of the moon (**was seen - saw - were seen - seen**) for the first time in 1959.
- 14- New bridges (**have been - have - had been - had**) built in Cairo recently.
- 15- When we arrived at the hotel, our room (**was preparing - prepared - was been prepared - was being prepared**).
- 16- The computer (**was checked - was checking - checked - had checked**) by the teacher yesterday.
- 17- The house (**had decorated - was decorated - décorated - had been decorated**) before the party.
- 18- This picture (**has been - had been - was being - was**) painted in the nineteenth century.
- 19- When we went into the hotel room, the beds (**aren't - weren't - won't - hadn't**) made.
- 20- This funny photo on the internet is very popular. It (**had been sent - has been sent - was sent - to be sent**) to hundreds of people!
- 21- When we arrived at the theatre, the actors were (**photographing - photograph - being photographed - been photographed**).
- 22- This library book is very old. I think it has been (**read - reading - readed - red**) by a lot of people!
- 23- The hotel had (**opened - been opening - be opened - been opened**) before the flats were built.
- 24- Yesterday evening, nearly a million people (**were watched - watched - was watching - was watched**) the TV programme.
- 25- The school windows (**have cleaned - cleaned - have been cleaned - were cleaned**) three times.
- 26- I (**took - was taken - had taken - was taking**) to the tennis competition at the weekend.
- 27- Some trees were (**cutting - being cut - being cutted - cuts**) down in the park today.
- 28- After the storm, some scientists (**sent - was sent - were sent - were sending**) to the beach to see what had happened.
- 29- A lot of wood and plastic bottles (**had left - left - was left - had been left**) on the beach by the big waves.
- 30- When I arrived, the buildings on the beach (**checked - were checking - were being checked - be checked**) for damage.

- 31- When I arrived, I (**interviewed – was interviewed – interviewing – interview**) one of the scientists.
- 32- He said that in the summer, the beach (**used – was used – uses – is used**) by thousands of tourists.
- 33- He said that the beach would (**recover – recovered – be recovering – be recovered**) completely by the following summer.
- 34- Hundreds of sailing boats (**can be seen – are seen – could be seen – are being seen**) from the beach yesterday. They looked lovely.
- 35- A lot more birds (**have been seen – have seen – had been seen – saw**) on the shore this year.
- 36- The teacher (**threatened – was threatened – threat – threatening**) the naughty students to dismiss them from the class.
- 37- When the police arrived at the bank, they realised that the money (**had taken – has been taken – had been taken – has taken**).
- 38- Mariam (**was cleaned – has cleaned – cleaned – got cleaned**) the windows. They look nice and clean now!
- 39- The lecturer (**is interrupted – was interrupted – interrupted – interruption**) by an embarrassing question.
- 40- Yesterday, our roof (**have had – have – was – had been**) repaired after the storm.
- 41- The criminal (**searched – be searched – was searched – was searching**) for weapons by the police .
- 42- As soon as the tickets (**had been booked – had booked – were booking – booked**), we went to the theatre.
- 43- The glass window (**is breaking – was breaking – was broken – had broken**) when the boy hit it with the ball.
- 44- We (**have invited – will invite – has invited – have been invited**) to a party at the weekend.
- 45- His car (**has sold – will sell – was selling – was sold**) for 200,000 pounds last week.
- 46- The bus (**was broken – broke – breaks – has been broken**) down yesterday.
- 47- They turned and (**were run – have been run – ran – running**) when they saw us coming.
- 48- She (**was accused – has accused – had accused – was accusing**) of forging the money.
- 49- The same characters (**were played – were playing – are play – playing**) by the same actors
- 50- Hamlet was written (**in – on – by – to**) William Shakespeare.
- 51- All the cakes in that shop (**made – were making – have been made – have**) by my aunt. She works there.

- 52- Those men (**are decorating – were being decorated – have been decorating – were decorating**) our house yesterday morning.
- 53- Millions of people all over the world (**watch – have watched – watched – are watching**) the 2016 Olympic Games.
- 54- The statue (**has carved – will be carved – has been carved – was carved**) out of stone by the ancient Egyptians.
- 55- The whole village (**damaged – got damaged – was damaging – has damaged**) by an earthquake.
- 56- The police said that the windows (**broke – had broken – have being broken – had been broken**) before the thieves went into the building.
- 57- Ali (**didn't see – wasn't seen – doesn't see – hasn't see**) at the party yesterday.
- 58- This year's prize for crime fiction has (**won – been won – been winning – win**) by a 78-year-old man.
- 59- We arrived while lunch was being (**served – serve – serving – serves**).
- 60- They were (**being painting – painted – painting – being painted**) the house when I arrived.
- 61- America (**discovered – was discovered – discovers – had discovered**) by Christopher Columbus.
- 62- He has never (**be – been – being – beat**) accused of cheating.
- 63- She will have (**been finished – finishing – be finished – finished**) her work by eight o'clock in the evening.
- 64- Nothing was (**known – knows – being knowing – knowing**) about the missing boy.
- 65- Prices (**expected – are expecting – are expected – expect**) to rise more and more.
- 66- It (**has believed – is believed – is believing – had believed**) that ghosts don't exist
- 67- It (**reports – reported – has been reported – being reported**) that food prices will increase.
- 68- It (**is fearing – has feared – will fear – is feared**) that there are no survivors of the crash.
- 69- She's thought to (**be suffered – being suffered – have suffered – suffers**) from diabetes.
- 70- It (**has known – is knowing – is being known – is known**) that crime doesn't benefit / pay.
- 71- The bank is alleged to (**be – have been – get – make**) robbed last night.
- 72- A famous tennis player is believed to (**be hurt – hurt – have hurt – is hurt**) after a city centre road accident.
- 73- Pelé (**thinks – is thought – has thought – had thought**) to be the greatest footballer.

74- People (**say – are said – have been said – were said**) that he is a spy.

75- It is now (**know – known – being known – knowing**) that Egypt was visited by increasing numbers of visitors last year.

Exercises on Unit : 8

2) Read the following passage, then answer the questions :

Charles was a professor with a huge house and a fortune. Today he lives in a small caravan where there is only second hand furniture. There are no signs that he was a rich man. He gets his clothes and other things from charity shops.

This change is not a tragedy. Charles was happy to give the lifestyle of a rich man. He was tired of being a person who had everything and many people have nothing. He made the choice to give all his money away. He says it has brought him happiness. "A few years ago," says Charles, "I was a millionaire, but I knew there were a lot of hungry people in the world." So, he gave away all his money to charities. When he had some left, he gave away small banknotes in the streets of local poor areas. Charles believes that many people want to earn a lot of money so that they will not have any worries. However, most people never make much money. He decided to drop out and has discovered that having only a little money makes you free. Are there any things he misses? "No, I'm much happier now. I wouldn't go back to being rich for anything – no way."

A) Choose the correct answer:

1. According to the text, Charles has
a) a family b) a huge house c) everything d) only a little money
2. Now, Charles is very happy because
a) he is a millionaire b) he has no money
c) he misses nothing d) he lives in a small caravan
3. To "give away" means
a) to return b) to give someone something you don't need
c) to stop doing something d) to change or leave a lifestyle
- 4- Charles knew there were hungry people in the world.
a) a few b) many c) no d) some
- 5- Most people want to earn much money to worries.
a) have b) increase c) find d) avoid
- 6- "Second hand furniture" means it is
a) new b) modern c) used d) expensive

B) Answer the following questions:

7. Would you like to be a millionaire? Why? Why not?
8. Compare Charles' life in the past to his life now.
9. What does the underlined word it refer to?
10. "I was a millionaire, but I knew there were a lot of hungry people in the world."
According to the passage, what is the role of the rich towards the poor?

4) Finish the following dialogue:

Azza and Radwa are talking about space travel.

Azza : I think that more money should be spent on exploring space.

Radwa: Why? 1).....?

Azza : One advantage is that we can learn more about the earth by learning about other planets.

Radwa: I think that one day, everyone will travel to space.

Azza : 2)..... . Not everyone will want to go to space.

Radwa: Are there any disadvantages to space travel?

Azza : 3)..... .

Radwa: Yes, it is very expensive. However, I've heard that without space travel, we would not have a lot of the technology that we use every day.

4)..... .

Azza : Yes, that's correct. A lot of the technology that we use was first used on spaceships.

Radwa: 5).....?

Azza : Yes. An example is sat-nav systems in people's cars. Satellites were first used to send information about spaceships.

Radwa: My father's car has sat-nav. I think it's very useful.

Azza : 6)..... . I think it's useful, too.

5) Write an email to a friend of (120) words on (1) of the following:

Your name's Reda. Your friend is Essmat. Her address is Essmat@newmail.com

- Why people have always wanted to explore new places
- What you think of science fiction

6) A- Translate into Arabic:

- The government is trying to improve the educational system to keep up with world challenges.
- Seeking peace requires a lot of hard work, patience and compromises. It must be worked out in face-to-face talks between the warring parties.
- The 25th of January, 2011 was a day for the whole world to know that Egypt's youth are able to do miracles and to make the impossible possible.

B- Translate into English:

- التكنولوجيا الحديثة سلاح ذو حدين لذا يجب ان تستعمل بحرص.
- هل تعتقد أن استكشاف الفضاء مضيعة للوقت والمال.
- تولى الحكومة اهتماما بالغا بإصلاح التعليم ليتماشى مع متطلبات العصر.
- تبنى العلاقات الخارجية للدول على أساس المصالح المشتركة فيما بينها.
- علينا في المرحلة القادمة ان نعمل بجد لتحتل مصر مكانة مرموقة بين دول العالم.
- تطورت تكنولوجيا الكمبيوتر والانترنت بصورة مذهلة محدثة ثورة في عالم الاتصالات.

Unit 9: Science and Scientists

Key Vocabulary

cause (of)	سبب	theory	نظرية
cancer	السرطان	dry	يجفف / جاف
illness (disease)	مرض	invisible	غير مرئي
install	يركب / يوصل / يثبت	release	يطلق / اطلاق
link	وصلة / يوصل	gain	يزداد / يكتسب - زيادة
signal	إشارة / يشير الى	process	عملية / يصنع
mast	عمود / برج	remove	يزيل

Vocabulary

leaves	اوراق الشجر	visible	مرئي
results	نتائج	invisibility	عدم الرؤية
particular (in ...)	خاص / بشكل خاص	device	جهاز
factories / plants	مصانع	feed – fed – fed	يطعم
research	يبحث / بحث (لا تعد)	proof	دليل / برهان
regularly	بانتظام	prove	يثبت / يبرهن
gradually	بالتدرج	chemical energy	طاقة كيميائية
worry	القلق	complain	يشتكى
worrying	مقلق	sunshine	سطوع الشمس
cells	خلايا	dentist	طبيب اسنان
equipment	معدات (لا تعد)	weak	ضعيف
tidy	يرتب / مرتب	infected (un.....)	مصاب
remote areas	اماكن نائية	infectious	معدى
diabetes	مرض السكرى	theoretically	نظريا
diabetic	مصاب بالسكرى	discoveries	اكتشافات
light	الضوء	soil	تربة خصبة
oxygen	الأكسجين	prepare	يعد / يجهز
carbon dioxide	ثاني أكسيد الكربون	rude (rudely)	وقح (بوقاحة)
limit	يقلل / حد	prevent	يمنع
weigh	يزن	pole	عمود من الحديد
extra weight	وزن زائد	tower	برج
rain water	مياه الأمطار	stick	عصا (عكاز)
rather than	بدلا من	frequently	مرارا
inaccurate	غير دقيق	uninjured	غير مصاب
informal	غير رسمى	impatient	غير صبور
intolerant	غير متسامح (متعصب)	impolite	غير مهذب

Prepositions, Idioms & Expressions

complain about	يشتكى من	much stronger	أقوى بكثير
test with	يختبر بـ	pass through	يجتاز / يمر عبر
do damage to	يسبب تلف لـ	change from ... into	يغير من ... الى
do an experiment on	يجرى تجربة على	follow advice	يتبع نصيحة
cure of / for	يعالج من / علاج لـ	Be certain of	متأكد من
live close to	يعيش قريباً من	a form of	شكل من اشكال ...
water with	يروى ... بـ	make ill	يجعل ... مريضاً
feel tired / ill	يشعر بالتعب / بالمرض	Be fed by	يتم أطعمته
turn on x off	يفتح x يقفل	It seems that	يبدو أن
worried about	قلق بشأن	make its own food	تصنع طعامها بنفسها
get food from	يحصل على طعام من	gain / put on weight	يزداد في الوزن
get cancer	يصاب بالسرطان	move in / into + مكان	يتحرك الى داخل
get a headache	عنده صداع	be released into	تنتقل في
children with mobiles	اطفال لديهم ...	travel for ... kilometres	يسافر مسافة
almost exactly the same weight as			تقريباً نفس الوزن بالضبط مثل

Antonyms

Word	الكلمة	Antonym	العكس
gradually	تدريجياً	suddenly	فجأة
prove	يثبت	disprove	يُثبت بطلان - يُكذِّب
theoretical	نظري	actual	فعلي - واقعي
remote	بعيد / نائي	near	قريب
gain	يزداد / يكتسب	lose	يفقد
release	يطلق سراح	capture	يحتجز / يستحوذ على
curable	يمكن علاجه / حميد	incurable	ليس له علاجه / خبيث
in theory	نظرياً / من حيث الفكرة	in practice	عملياً / من حيث التطبيق

Derivatives

Verb	Noun	Adjective
dry	dryness	dried
link	link	linked to
install	installation	installed
process	process	processed
tolerate	tolerance	tolerant
prove	proof	proven

Words go together

perform an experiment	يُجري تجربة	catch a disease	يصاب بمرض
medical care	الرعاية الطبية	develop a theory	يُطور نظرية
health care	الرعاية الصحية	raise awareness	يزيد الوعي
blood circulation	الدورة الدموية	scientific breakthrough	طفرة علمية
diabetic coma	غيبوبة سكر	dentist's	عيادة اسنان
Wherever possible	طالما ممكن	dental care	الرعاية بالأسنان

Read the following carefully

Listening

Narrator: Most people love their mobile phone, but some people are worried about the effect that mobile phone signals might have on our health. These signals are sent to and from our mobile phones and mobile devices all the time. Scientists think that the signals are too weak to do any damage to our health. However, mobile phones have not been around long enough for scientists to be certain of this.

For that reason, parents of children with mobile phones should get their children to limit the amount of time they spend using them. They should also get them to turn off their mobile phones when they go to sleep, or to put them in a different room. Although mobile phone signals are weak, the signals sent from mobile phone masts are much stronger. Some people who live near mobile phone masts are in particular worry about what the radio waves might do to them. These waves are very powerful and can travel for many kilometres. They can pass through buildings, so they can easily pass through our bodies too. Many people who live close to masts have complained about feeling tired, getting headaches and even getting forms of cancer. But is there really a link between illnesses and radio waves?

It seems that there is no proof that radio waves make people ill. In 2014, scientists did an experiment in England. They had ten students move into a house with a mobile phone mast in the garden. They had the mobile phone mast turned on ten days after the students moved in. However, the students thought that the mast was on all the time and they told the scientists that they felt ill. The result of the experiment seems to show that the cause of illnesses might be worrying about the effects of phone masts, rather than the radio waves themselves. However, to be safe, scientists believe that we should have mobile phone masts installed in high or remote areas wherever possible. It's probably a good idea for people who live close to mobile phone masts to get their health checked frequently, too. Follow this advice and you will be able to get things done on your mobile phone without worrying about your health.

Reading

Food from the air

Everyone has seen plants growing, but have you ever thought where they get their food from? In 1652, a European scientist called Van Helmot asked this question. Before this time, it had always been thought that plants must get their food from soil. However, Van Helmot decided to test the theory with experiments. First, some soil was dried, put into a pot and weighed. After a small tree had been weighed, it was planted in the pot and rain water was added. Then, he had the tree watered regularly with rain water.

After five years, the tree was removed from the pot and weighed again. Van Helmot found that the tree had gained a huge amount of weight. When he got the soil weighed, however, it was almost exactly the same weight as it had been five years earlier. Van Helmot thought this was strange, but decided that the extra weight of the tree must have come from the water. He didn't realise that the tree was being fed by another invisible food.

We now know that plants and trees make their own food. Their leaves are like factories that produce everything they need, so that plants can change the energy from the sun into chemical energy. During this process, oxygen and sugar are produced. The oxygen is released back into the air, and the sugar is used by the plant as food.

Definitions

install	to put a piece of equipment somewhere and connect it to be ready to be used.		
cancer	a serious disease in which cells in the body grow in a way that is not normal.		
illness	the disease of your body or mind or the state of having a disease.		
mast	a tall pole often used for sending waves of radio or television signals.		
signal	a number of light waves, sound waves that send information to radio, television.		
link	a connection between two or more people, events, ideas or situations		
cause	the person, event or thing that makes something happen		
process	a series of events or changes that happen naturally		
remove	to take something away or to get rid of a problem .		
release	to stop holding something or to let someone go free after keeping them prisoner		
invisible	impossible to see	gain	to increase in something

Language Notes

waste (الوقت) يضيع / (المال) يبدد	lose يخسر
--	------------------

Ex: The team played well, but **lost** the game.

He **lost** a lot of money at races.

She lost her mother (= Her mother died) last year.

I **wasted** my money on this radio. It broke down after one day!

Operation عملية تشغيل / عملية جراحية	process (سلسلة تغييرات أو أحداث)
---	---

Ex: Following the earthquake, a large-scale rescue **operation** was launched.

He's got to have an **operation** on his shoulder.

New techniques are used to improve the learning **process**.

cure (v)	يعالج مريض	▪ The doctor cured my aunt.
cure (v)	يعالج مرض	▪ The doctor cured fever.
cure of	يعالج مريض من مرض	▪ The doctor cured my aunt of fever.
cure for	علاج لـ	▪ There is no cure for cancer.
treat: try to cure by medical care	يعالج	▪ The doctor treated him with aspirin.
heal (burns / wounds / cuts / injuries / broken organs)		
▪ يلتئم (تستخدم مع الحروق و الجروح و الإصابات و الأعضاء المكسورة)		
His wound took along time to heal. This ointment مرهم heals cuts.		

series (سلسلة (أحداث / كتب / أفلام / اجتماعات)	serious جاد / خطير
---	---------------------------

Ex: They will hold a **series of meetings** over the next few weeks.

The government is trying to solve the **serious** problem of unemployment.

expect	يتوقع	except	ماعدا
---------------	-------	---------------	-------

Ex: We **expect** him to win the race.

We **expect** that he **will pass** the exam easily.

We **expected** that he **would pass** the exam easily.

All students passed the exam **except** Ali.

see / hear / listen to / watch / notice

يأتي بعد الأفعال السابقة مفعول ثم فعل ينهي بـ ing للتعبير عن جزء من الحدث أو يأتي بعدها مفعول ثم مصدر للتعبير عن الحدث ككل.

Ex: I saw him playing football. = I saw part of the game.

I saw him play football. = I saw the whole game.

After + v. + ing / noun	بعد (يليهما فعل ينتهي بـ ing أو اسم)
--------------------------------	--------------------------------------

Ex: **After doing** his homework, he slept. **After dinner**, he went out.

▪ عادة ما تأتي الصفات قبل الأسماء ولكن تأتي بعد هذه الكلمات:-

something / everything / anything / nothing / somebody etc.
--

Ex: Let's go somewhere quiet. - Have you read anything interesting lately?

taste (v)	يتذوق	▪ Taste this and see if it's too salty.
taste (N)	ذوق - طعم - مذاق	▪ That cake has a nice taste.
tasty (adj)	لذيذ المذاق (مع الأكل والشرب)	▪ They serve very tasty dishes here.
tasteful (adj)	حسن الذوق	▪ They bought tasteful furniture.
testy = irritable	عصبي / سريع الغضب	▪ He is a testy person.

- **Prefixes** هي مقاطع توضع في بداية الكلمة لتعطي معنى النفي :
- **In**visible - **In**correct - **in**tolerant - **in**accurate
- **un**infected. - **un**inhibited - **un**injured - **un**intelligent
- **im**possible - **im**moral - **im**polite - **im**patient
- **الصفة التي تبدأ ب (in) عند النفي يضاف إليها (un) :**
- **الصفة التي تبدأ ب (m) أو (p) عند النفي يضاف إليها (im) :**

cause يتسبب في **cause + مصدر + to + مفعول** يجعل

- This disease can **cause** blindness.
- The earthquake **caused** several buildings **to collapse**.

- **complain to** يشكو إلى - You need to complain to the local government.
- **complain about** يشكو من - She never stops complaining about his laziness.

- **amount of** كمية من - The project will take a huge amount of **time**.
- **number of** عدد من - They received a number of **complaints**.

- **feed** يطعم - She can't **feed** her baby.
- **feed on** يتغذى على - Lions **feed on** meat.

- **soil** تربة زراعية - We can't grow plants here. It is a salty soil.
- **land** ارض اليابسة - Columbus sailed for two months before seeing land.
- **earth** تراب - الأرض (كوكب) - The spaceship returned to the earth.
- **dust** غبار - تراب ناعم - He drove off in a cloud of dust.

- **result** نتيجة - Unemployment is the result of the new economic policy.
- **result from** ينتج عن - Food shortage results from the lack of rainfall.
- **result in = lead to** يؤدي إلى - Smoking results in cancer.

Language Functions

Asking for facts

Could / Can you tell us something about what was eaten at this time?
And is it true / right that they did not eat much meat?

Giving facts

It is possible that It is a well-known fact that
We can be confident that We can't be sure of this, but

Choose the correct answer:

- 1- (**Cancer – Diabetes – Colic – Headache**) is a serious disease in which cells in the body grow in a way that is not normal.
- 2- A (**nest – column – mast – sail**) is tall pole often used for sending waves of radio or television signals.
- 3- A (**sign – notice – board – signal**) is a number of light waves, sound waves that send information to radio , television
- 4- A (**leek – link – lick – leak**) is a connection between two or more people, events, ideas or situations.
- 5- Most scientists agree that human activity is the (**result – reason – cause – case**) of global warming.
- 6- Our English teacher wants us to form a (**group – communicate – contact – link**) between our school and a school in England.
- 7- It is sometimes difficult to get a telephone (**call – card – charge – signal**) in remote parts of the country.
- 8- Diabetes is an (**illness – illegal – ulcer – ideal**) which affects a lot of people.
- 9- They have put a new telephone (**box – mast – cover – charger**) on the roof of that building .
- 10- My mother bought a new washing machine and my uncle is going to (**instill – stall – install – instoll**) it this evening.
- 11- Bad traffic is (**causing – letting – making – doing**) a lot of people to be late for work.
- 12- Fareeda looks (**ill – sickness – illness – disease**). She should see a doctor.
- 13- Look at the lights on the boat. Are they (**signal – sign – signalling – looking**) to us?
- 14- The teacher asked the technician to (**link – communicate – contact – lift**) all the computers in the classroom.
- 15- We bought a new program for our computer and the (**install – instillation – installation – stale**) has been very successful.
- 16- The car shouldn't be parked there so the police will have it (**released – gained – removed – added**).
- 17- You can see some air pollution, but a lot of it is (**visible – invisible – invisable – invisibility**).
- 18- Children grow fast and (**earn – win – beat – gain**) a lot of weight in their teenage years.
- 19- It isn't usually possible to (**release – realise – recognize – ease**) zoo animals into the wild, because they wouldn't know how to survive.
- 20- It was a long and difficult (**operation – process – procession – protest**) to build the bridge, but cars can use it now.
- 21- It is (**good – polite – decent – impolite**) to eat with your mouth open.

- 22- I wrote a / an (**formal – informal – formality – invisible**) letter to my friend.
- 23- The timetable is very old so the information in it is (**new – recent – inaccurate – fresh**).
- 24- The primary school children were very noisy and the teacher started to be (**inpatient – patient – unpatient – impatient**).
- 25- A tour guide can't be (**tolerant – intolerant – untolerant – imtolerant**) because he meets so many different people from many different countries.
- 26- Scientists do not think that all animals are (**unintelligent – intelligent – inintelligent – imintelligent**). Some of them are *very clever*.
- 27- Tarek fell off his bike this morning, but fortunately he was (**hurt – injured – iminjured – uninjured**).
- 28- A (**mast – pole – tower – stick**) is used to send radio waves.
- 29- You could use a (**mast – pole – tower – stick**) to help you to walk.
- 30- We could walk up a (**mast – pole – tower – stick**) to get a good view?
- 31- We put a flag on a (**mast – pole – tower – stick**)?
- 32- This information is not correct. It is (**unaccurate – accurate – inaccurate – imaccurate**).
- 33- The (**result – outlet – insult – revolt**) of the experiment surprised everyone.
- 34- You will never (**relieve – approve – achieve – believe**) very much if you do not work hard.
- 35- Scientists often do experiments to prove a particular (**theory – habit – custom – tradition**).
- 36- I found playing the guitar very difficult at first, but in the last two weeks I've (**artificially – brutally – gradually – cheerfully**) improved
- 37- We need an electrician to (**instill – still – plant – install**) our new washing machine.
- 38- Some people suffer from mental (**ill – illness – sick – painful**).
- 39- (**Artistically – Atomically – Theoretically – Historically**), anyone can travel to the moon.
- 40- Some scientists still believe in Darwin's (**function – theory – diary – delivery**) of evolution.
- 41- There is no (**gain – pain – rain – sail**) without pain.
- 42- There are some sports where it is good to (**earn – win – defeat – gain**) weight, rather than lose it.
- 43- Farmers water their crops (**regularly – bitterly – disorderly – formerly**) to grow well.
- 44- The little boy hiding behind the door thought he was (**divisible – edible – legible – invisible**).
- 45- If you don't turn the taps off, you can waste a huge (**number – amount – account – discount**) of water in a short time.

- 46- Leaves falling from trees in the autumn is a completely natural (**excess – business – process – pretence**).
- 47- His greatest (**couragement – arrangement – achievement – agreement**) was becoming the captain of the national team when he was 16.
- 48- There was a (**manual – punctual – spiritual – gradual**) improvement in her schoolwork.
- 49- The clothes will (**wet – dry – fry – cry**) if you hang them in the sun.
- 50- Something which is (**compatible – invisible – audible – flexible**) is impossible to see.
- 51- (**Gradually – Actually – Mutually – Individually**) means something happening slowly for so long .
- 52- If you want to go fishing , you shouldn't be (**impatient – patient – patience – patiently**).
- 53- (**Gradually – Mentally – Electrically – Logic**), she realized that he wasn't telling her the truth.
- 54- These bacteria are (**visible – feasible – practical – invisible**) unless viewed with a microscope.
- 55- The government has been working to secure the (**removal – release – disease – increase**) of the hostages
- 56- Chemistry is very difficult for me, but I am (**regularly – specially – gradually – invisibly**) understanding it better.
- 57- Most of the food we buy is (**process – processed – pros – processing**) in some way.
- 58- She spent a considerable (**mount – count – discount – amount**) of money on clothes.
- 59- I have been working all day , but I feel as if I (**chained – achieved – charged – doing**) nothing.
- 60- (**Diabetic – Parasitic – Aquatic – Gigantic**) patients sometimes go into a coma.
- 61- I've asked my neighbour to (**water – alter – barter – enter**) the plants while I'm away.
- 62- You should check the plant for any (**impossible – incredible – visible – admirable**) signs of disease.
- 63- She stayed in the job for five years, (**gain – gaining – earn – earning**) valuable experience.
- 64- According to the (**theoretical – theory – process – therapy**) of relativity, nothing can travel faster than light.
- 65- A virus is (**invisible – obscure – regular – gradual**) to the eye and can only be seen with a powerful microscope.
- 66- It is a complex (**process – cure – amount – theory**) to generate electricity from nuclear energy.

- 67- A (**clue – cube – pure – cure**) has not been found for this disease yet.
- 68- You need a certain (**theory – process – invisible – amount**) of sunshine to get enough vitamin D.
- 69- Watch this film to understand the (**release – achievement – process – gain**) of photosynthesis, how a plant makes food.
- 70- The (**Incredible – Diabetic – Invisible – Invincible**) Man is a famous novel and film about a man who could not be seen by anyone.
- 71- If you have (**cancer – diabetes – measles – experiments**) you must not eat too much sugar.
- 72- To (**please – decrease – increase – release**) means to stop holding something.
- 73- They suspected that she had killed him but they could never actually (**improve – deprive – prune – prove**) that it was her.
- 74- Plants change the sun's energy into (**chemical – chemist – chemistry – solar**) energy.
- 75- She is worried (**of – with – from – about**) her future as she hasn't done well in her science test.
- 76- Everyone has seen plants (**grow – growing – grows – grew**).
- 77- One day scientists will find a (**heal – care – cure – deal**) for all serious illnesses.
- 78- I usually (**eat – food – feed – fade**) the neighbour's cat while she's away.
- 79- Plants and trees (**gain – win – earn – make**) their own food.
- 80- We have several (**theory – theoretical – theories – theoretically**) about how this disease spreads, but we need to do more studies.

Causative العلاقة السببية

1- في المعلوم :

Have + فاعل + مصدر + مفعول = Get + فاعل + to + مصدر + مفعول.....

- تستخدم هذه الصيغة بمعنى يجعل أو يقنع شخص ما بفعل شيء ما (وتعد have أكثر رسمية) .

The teacher **had us do** some extra work today.

Please, **get** Yasser **to help** you.

- يمكن استخدام **allow / permit / persuade / cause / force** وبعدها to+ inf. مثل get .

- يمكن استخدام **let / make** وبعدها مصدر بدون to مثل have. (هذا في المعلوم فقط).

2- في المجهول :

- للتعبير عن أننا نرتب لشخص آخر أن يقوم بعمل شيء لنا نستخدم هذه الصيغة :

P.P + مفعول + في زمن الجملة "get" Have + الفاعل صاحب الشيء

I don't cut my hair. I **have** my hair **cut**.

Do you usually **get** your room **cleaned**? - No, I clean it myself.

ولاحظ الفرق في المعنى بين هاتين الجملتين:

1- I washed my car. 2- I had my car washed.

by myself

by someone else

1- تعني الجملة الأولى أنني غسلت السيارة بنفسي

2- تعني الجملة الثانية أن شخصاً آخر قد غسلها لي

وهذا بيان بتصريفات الفعل have على حسب زمن الجملة:

1- مضارع بسيط	have / has + مفعول + p.p	I <u>have</u> my hair <u>cut</u> on Fridays.
2- ماضي بسيط	had + مفعول + p.p	She <u>had</u> her dresses <u>made</u> .
3- مضارع مستمر	am/is/are + having + مفعول + p.p.	We <u>are having</u> our flat <u>painted</u> .
4- ماضي مستمر	was/were + having + مفعول + p.p	I <u>was having</u> my car <u>serviced</u> .
5- مضارع تام	have / has + had + مفعول + p.p	He <u>has had</u> his room <u>cleaned</u> .
6- ماضي تام	had had + مفعول + p.p	I <u>had had</u> my film <u>developed</u> .
7- أفعال ناقصة	will have + مفعول + p.p	He <u>will have</u> his crops <u>picked</u> .

لاحظ أن هذه الصيغة شبيهة في المعنى بالمبنى للمجهول فليس من المهم ذكر الفاعل :

We always **get** our clothes **washed**. (Our clothes are washed for us.)

I **had** my **teeth checked** yesterday. (My teeth were checked yesterday.)

Ali **is getting** his car repaired. (Ali's car is being repaired.)

و مثل المبنى للمجهول أيضا يمكن ذكر الفاعل بعد **by** :

I'm having my homework checked **by the teacher**.

لاحظ : استخدام العلاقة السببية في السؤال والاجابة :

Did you have your meal **prepared**?

No, I **didn't** (have it prepared). I prepared it myself.

Choose the correct answer:

- 1- The PE teacher had us (**ran – run – to run – running**) around the playground four times .
- 2- If you don't know how to use the computer, get your older brother (**to help – help – helped – helping**) you .
- 3- How often do you get your teeth (**check – to check – checking – checked**) at the dentist's.
- 4- We are eating in a restaurant tonight because our parents (**had – have – are having – have to**) our kitchen painted.
- 5- Walid had his eyes (**test – testing – tested – testable**) last week, and now he needs to wear glasses.
- 6- Can I borrow your bike? I can't use mine because I'm having it (**repaired – to repair – repairing – be repaired**)
- 7- My mother usually gets me (**tidy – tidied – tidying – to tidy**) my bedroom at the weekend .
- 8- Hamdi's homework was not very good so the teacher had him (**do – done – did – to do**) it again.
- 9- The manager got a technician (**install – istalled – istalling – to install**) a new computer program .

- 10- Ali is going to the stadium this afternoon. Let's get him (**to buy – buy – bought – buying**) some tickets for next week's match.
- 11- Abdullah asked the painter (**painted – paint – to paint – painting**) his house last week.
- 12- My parents get the plants (**water – watering – to water – watered**) at the weekend.
- 13- Tarek has his photos (**print – printed – prints – printing**) after he takes them.
- 14- When my cousins were in England, They had some money (**sent – send – sends – sending**) by my uncle.
- 15- Parents should (**get – have – let – make**) their children to limit the amount of time they spend using mobile phone
- 16- We don't always (**had – have – will have – are having**) our car washed.
- 17- They should also get them (**turning – turn – turned – to turn**) off their mobile phones when they go to sleep.
- 18- They had ten students (**move – to move – moved – moving**) into a house with a mobile phone mast in the garden.
- 19- They had the mobile phone mast (**turning – turned – turn – to turn**) on.
- 20- Scientists believe that we should (**be – do – have – got**) mobile phone masts installed in high or remote areas.
- 21- It's probably a good idea for people who live close to mobile phone masts to (**get – give – go – got**) their health checked frequently.
- 22- I (**got – had – have – having**) Ali to go to the sports club with me, although he didn't want to go.
- 23- Mother had Shaimaa (**tidy – to tidy – tiding – to tidying**) her room before she went out.
- 24- Before the meeting, the manager always gets the reports (**to type – type – typed – typing**).
- 25- Dina (**allowed – make – has – does**) the flat cleaned every week
- 26- Adel always asks someone to fix his computer. Adel always (**has it fixed – has fixed it – have fixed it – have it fixed**).
- 27- Fareeda got her bad tooth pulled out (**from – by – with – on**) the dentist.
- 28- The park manager wants to (**had – have – has – got**) the plants watered every day.
- 29- I (**hadn't – didn't have – haven't – don't have**) my hair cut yesterday.
- 30- I (**has – have – got – get**) my car checked before I left the garage last week.
- 31- I (**have – will had – am having – had**) my house decorated next week.
- 32- He always (**gets – has – having – getting**) his sister to wash his clothes.
- 33- I will have my car (**mended – to mend – have mended – was mending**) tomorrow.

- 34- The teacher (**got – caused – had – allowed**) us copy the notes from the blackboard.
- 35- I get my students (**to waste – waste – not waste – not to waste**) so much time.
- 36- Leila usually (**would have – has – is having – has to**) her teeth checked twice a year.
- 37- Wait there and I'll (**have – get – let – make**) Yasser to help you with those heavy bags.
- 38- I usually (**make my hair – have cut my hair – get my hair – have my hair cut**) once a month.
- 39 - You can (**printing your name – have printed your name – get your name printed – get printed your name**) on a T-shirt in that shop.
- 40- Yesterday, we (**have had – have – have to – had to have**) our roof repaired after the storm.

Exercises on Unit : 9

2- Read the passage then answer the questions :

Some people say they have no memory at all. But of course we all have a memory. Our memory tells us who we are and helps us to make use in the present of what we have learnt in the past. In fact we have different types of memory. For example, our visual memory helps us recall faces and places. Some people have a strong visual memory, they can remember exactly what they have seen, for example, pages of a book, as a complete picture. Our verbal memory helps us remember words and figures we may have heard but not seen or written: items of a shopping list, a chemical formula, dates or recipe. With our emotional memory, we recall situations or places where we had strong feelings, perhaps of happiness or unhappiness. We also have special memories for smell, taste, touch and sound, and for performing physical movements.

We have two ways of storing any of these memories. Our short-term memory stores items for up to thirty seconds. Our long-term memory, on the other hand, may store items for a lifetime. Older people in fact have a much better long-term memory than short-term. They may forget what they have done only a few hours ago, but have the clearest remembrance of when they were very young. You might assume that the more we remember the better. In fact, forgetting is as important as remembering. If we remember all our unhappy times, we would become mentally ill.

A) Choose the correct answer :

- 1- Our memory helps us recall faces and places.
- a) verbal b) smell c) taste d) visual
- 2- We can remember words and figures we may have heard with our memory.
- a) verbal b) emotional c) visual d) nonverbal

3- With our emotional memory, we situations or places where we had strong feelings.

- a) recall b) remind c) forget d) get

4- is a word in the last paragraph that means accept as true.

- a) Remember b) Record c) Assume d) Forget

5- Our short-term memory stores items for up to

- a) 80 second b) 50 seconds c) 40 seconds d) 30 seconds

6- Forgetting is as remembering.

- a) not as important b) as important c) more d) less

B) Answer the following questions :

7- Suggest a title to the passage

8- Explain in your own words why we could not survive without a memory.

9- What kinds of memory are used when we do the following?

- a) play the guitar. b) feel alarmed when we smell burning.

10- Why is forgetting as essential as remembering?

4) Complete the following dialogue :

Mohammed : Why are you too worried about your father's health?

Omar : 1).....

Mohammed : Cancer ? 2).....?

Omar : Only last week.

Mohammed : 3).....?

Omar : Yes , he knew but 4).....

Mohammed : You father is a faithful and brave man

Omar : 5).....?

Mohammed : No, they didn't discover an effective medicine but it's treated chemically.

Omar : 6).....

Mohammed : Thanks for your kind feelings

5) Write a paragraph of 120 words about one of the following :

- 1- The job you'd like to do in the future. 2- Incurable diseases

6) A) Translate into Arabic :

1- Most of the energy we use today comes from coal, oil and gas.

2- Mariam and Ahmed had their teeth checked by the dentist last Tuesday.

3- Scientists try hard to find a cure for our incurable diseases.

4- We now know that plants and trees make their own food. Their leaves are like factories producing everything they need.

5- Plants can also change the energy from the sun into chemical energy.

B) Translate into English :

1- لقد أصبح متاحا لكل طالب اقتناء جهاز حاسب آلي.

2- الزلازل والأعاصير والبراكين من الكوارث الطبيعية التي تسبب دمارا هائلا.